

# Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve Management Plan

June 2012



Department of  
Conservation  
*Te Papa Atawhai*



---

---

# Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve Management Plan

**June 2012**

Partially reviewed November 2015

---

---

**Published by:**

Tasman District Council    and  
Private Bag 4  
Richmond  
New Zealand

Department of Conservation  
Nelson Marlborough Conservancy  
Private Bag 5  
Nelson, New Zealand

**Cover** - all photos by Diana Parr except as follows: Awaroa baches – Jen Andrews; Abel Tasman Wilson’s Experience Vista – Martin Rodd; children leaping – Rob Greenaway; snorkelers – Elizabeth Bean; kayakers and Marahau Beach Camp water taxi - Grant Reburn; Torrent Bay – Eric Verstappen; Hui Te Rangiora (carved tekoteko on the gable of the meeting house, Turangapeke, at Te Awhina Marae, Motueka) – Rudy Tetteroo.

© Copyright 2015, Tasman District Council and New Zealand Department of Conservation

ISBN: 978-0-473-34465-8 (print)

ISBN: 978-0-473-34466-5 (online)

# Contents

---

Preface .....	9
The Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve .....	12
Vision.....	13
Primary Objectives.....	13
Outcomes at places .....	13
How to use this plan.....	14
<b>Part A - Matters relating to Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve as a whole .....</b>	<b>14</b>
1. Introduction .....	15
1.1 Management planning and legislative context .....	15
1.1.1 Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve, adjacent lands and coastal waters.....	15
1.1.2 Legislative context .....	15
1.2 Administration .....	16
1.2.1 Administration Committee .....	16
1.2.2 Management Plan Approval Committee .....	16
1.2.3 Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board.....	16
2. Treaty of Waitangi .....	17
2.1 Giving effect to the Treaty .....	17
2.2 Customary use.....	18
2.2.1 Legislation.....	19
2.2.2 Fishing (including shellfish) and seaweed harvesting .....	19
2.2.3 Dead animals and plants .....	19
2.3 Access for kaitiaki responsibilities and cultural activities.....	20
3. Conservation of natural resources.....	22
3.1 Terrestrial, freshwater and marine species, habitats and ecosystems .....	22
3.1.1 Protection, restoration and preservation.....	25
3.1.2 Fishing and the taking of seaweed and driftwood .....	26
3.1.3 Survey, monitoring and research .....	26
3.2 Biosecurity and management of threats to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems .....	27
3.2.1 Animal pests.....	28
3.2.2 Plant pests.....	28
3.2.3 Biosecurity .....	29
3.2.4 Other threats.....	29
3.3 Fire management.....	30

3.4	Geological features, landforms, and landscape .....	31
3.4.1	Development and preservation .....	32
3.5	Ecosystem services.....	34
4.	Historical and cultural heritage .....	35
4.1.2	European history.....	36
4.1.3	Recent history .....	36
4.2	Management of historical and cultural heritage.....	36
4.2.1	Protection of historic places.....	36
4.2.2	Protected objects .....	37
4.2.3	Māori sites.....	38
4.2.4	European sites, relics, and protected New Zealand objects.....	38
4.2.5	Threats.....	38
4.2.6	Interpretation.....	39
4.2.7	Memorials .....	39
5.	Natural hazards.....	42
6.	People’s benefit and enjoyment .....	43
6.1	Planning and management for people’s benefit and enjoyment.....	43
6.1.1	Access and use .....	44
6.1.2	Visitor experiences.....	45
6.1.3	Recreational Zones .....	46
6.1.4	Monitoring.....	59
6.1.5	Noise.....	59
6.1.6	Camping and overnight stays in vessels .....	59
6.1.7	Educational and other large groups.....	60
6.1.8	Human waste and litter .....	60
6.1.9	Information including interpretation.....	61
6.1.10	Advocacy .....	61
6.2	Sports fishing and game bird hunting .....	63
6.3	The use of vehicles and other forms of transport .....	64
6.3.1	Land vehicles.....	64
6.3.2	Vessels .....	64
6.3.3	Aircraft .....	65
6.4	Animals .....	65
6.4.1	Horses.....	66
6.4.2	Dogs.....	66
6.4.3	Other domestic animals .....	66
7.	Accommodation and related facilities .....	68
7.1	Accommodation.....	68

7.2	Other facilities and structures .....	68
7.2.1	Monitoring.....	69
8.	Activities requiring specific authorisation .....	71
8.1	Concessions - general .....	71
8.1.1	Processing concession applications.....	71
8.1.2	Concession management .....	71
8.1.3	Historic cultural values.....	72
8.1.4	Concession monitoring.....	72
8.2	Recreation concessions.....	73
8.2.1	Recreation concession management .....	73
8.2.2	Water-based commercially guided activity .....	76
8.2.3	Water taxi activity.....	77
8.2.4	Charter boat activity.....	80
8.2.5	Support vessel activity .....	80
8.2.6	Servicing floating accommodation activity.....	81
8.2.7	Commercially guided walking activity .....	81
8.2.8	Freedom water-based commercial activity .....	81
8.2.9	Cruise ships .....	82
8.2.10	Organised sporting events.....	83
8.2.11	Sale or hire of goods and equipment .....	83
8.2.12	Personal watercraft, hovercraft, amphibious vessels, other unconventional vessels and parasailing .....	83
8.2.13	Land vehicles.....	83
8.2.14	Aircraft .....	83
8.2.15	Noise.....	84
8.2.16	Advertising.....	84
8.2.17	Other concession activities .....	84
8.2.18	Monitoring.....	85
8.3	Non-recreation concessions.....	90
8.3.1	Utilities .....	90
8.3.2	Easements .....	90
8.3.3	Aircraft .....	90
8.3.4	Coastal fishing.....	90
8.3.5	Removal of sand, shingle or other natural mineral material.....	91
8.3.6	Commercial filming and photography .....	91
8.3.7	Monitoring.....	91
8.4	Other authorisations for non-commercial activities.....	93
8.4.1	Processing applications for an authorisation.....	93

8.4.2	Scientific research .....	94
8.4.3	Monitoring.....	94
9.	Community relations.....	96
9.1	Public participation in management of the reserve .....	96
9.1.1	Local economies.....	96
9.1.2	Consultation .....	96
9.1.3	Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum.....	97
9.1.4	Neighbouring lands.....	97
9.1.5	Unformed legal roads, accreted land and other additions .....	98
9.1.6	Aircraft .....	98
9.1.7	Coastal waters .....	98
9.1.8	Discharges from vessels.....	103
9.1.9	Water and land-based commercial activity.....	103
9.1.10	Moorings and other structures .....	104
10.	Implementation, monitoring, reporting, and review.....	106
10.1	Plan implementation, monitoring, reporting and review .....	106
10.1.1	Implementation.....	106
10.1.2	Monitoring.....	106
10.1.3	Reporting .....	106
10.1.4	Review.....	106
10.2	Compliance and law enforcement.....	107
10.3	Helicopter, vehicle and vessel use.....	107
	<b>Part B - The places within Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve.....</b>	<b>110</b>
11.	Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land.....	112
11.1	Spatial definition of Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land .....	112
11.2	Outcome for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land.....	112
11.3	Long-term objectives for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land.....	113
11.4	Conservation of natural resources.....	113
11.4.1	Protection.....	113
11.4.2	Pest management.....	113
11.5	People’s benefit and enjoyment .....	114
11.5.1	Visitor experiences.....	114
11.5.2	Recreational Zones .....	115
11.5.3	Land vehicles.....	116
11.5.4	Vessels .....	116
11.5.5	Dogs.....	119
11.5.6	Educational and other large groups.....	119
11.5.7	Advocacy .....	119

11.6	Facilities and structures.....	120
11.7	Activities requiring specific authorisation .....	120
11.7.1	Recreation concessions.....	120
11.7.2	Non-recreation concessions.....	124
12.	Foreshore Adjacent to National Park .....	126
12.1	Spatial definition of Foreshore Adjacent to National Park .....	126
12.2	Outcome for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park.....	126
12.3	Long-term objective for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park.....	126
12.4	Conservation of natural resources.....	127
12.4.1	Protection, restoration and preservation.....	127
12.4.2	Seals .....	127
12.4.3	Island biosecurity and threat management.....	128
12.5	People’s benefit and enjoyment .....	128
12.5.1	Access .....	128
12.5.2	Visitor experiences.....	128
12.5.3	Recreational Zones .....	129
12.5.4	Land vehicles.....	130
12.5.5	Vessels .....	130
12.5.6	Dogs.....	130
12.6	Facilities and structures.....	131
12.7	Activities requiring specific authorisation .....	132
12.7.1	Recreation concessions.....	132
	Glossary.....	137
	Bibliography .....	149
Appendix 1	Management planning.....	150
Appendix 2	Legislation and statutory documents .....	153
Appendix 3	Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve creation, management and delegations.....	159
Appendix 4	Indigenous animal and plant species likely to be found within, or in the vicinity of, the reserve .....	162
Appendix 5	‘Threatened’ and ‘at risk’ indigenous plants and animals of Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve .....	167
Appendix 6	Schedule 25.1F, Tasman Resource Management Plan: Areas with nationally or internationally important natural ecosystem values (within the coastal marine area) ....	170
Appendix 7	Processes and principles for setting maximum activity levels for water taxi and charter boat activity .....	171
Appendix 8	Summary of charter boat activity.....	173
Appendix 9	Conservation General Policies (2005) referred to in this plan.....	174

## Maps

---

Map 1: Location of Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve	11
Map 2: Recreational Zones	47
Map 2A: Anchorage Coastal Access Points	50
Map 2B: Torrent Bay/Rakauroa Coastal Access Points	51
Map 2C: Medlands Bay and Bark Bay/Wairima Coastal Access Points	52
Map 2D: Onetahuti Coastal Access Point and the designated landing area for water taxis at Tonga Quarry	53
Map 2E: Awaroa Beach and Sawpit Point Coastal Access Points	54
Map 2F: Totaranui Coastal Access Point	55
Map 2G: Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor	57
Map 3: Unalienated Crown land, Tinline Bay and Coquille Bay	99
Map 4: Unalienated Crown land, Apple Tree Bay/Whenuakura and Stilwell Bay	100
Map 5: Unformed legal road, reserve land and unalienated Crown land, Torrent Bay/Rakauroa, Boundary Bay, Frenchman Bay/Potikitawa and Sandfly Bay	101
Map 6: Foreshore adjacent to Abel Tasman Memorial	102
Map 7: Places	110
Maps 7A, 7B & 7C: Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land detail	111
Map 8: Awaroa Spit bird nesting/roosting area	117
Map 9: Venture Creek swimming area	118
Map 10: One nautical mile from the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve	139

## Tables

---

Table 1: Maximum levels of water-based commercially guided activity	77
Table 2: Maximum levels of water taxi activity	79
Table 3: Maximum number of trips for charter boat activity	80
Table 4: Maximum number of visits for cruise ship activity	82
Table 5: Conditions for recreation concession activities on the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land	121
Table 6: Conditions for recreation concession activities on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park	132

# Preface

---

The Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve was gazetted as a scenic reserve in January 2007. It is managed under delegated authority from the Minister of Conservation and the Director-General of Conservation by an Administration Committee, which consists of the Chief Executive Officer of Tasman District Council and the Conservator of the Nelson Marlborough Conservancy of the Department of Conservation.

This Management Plan for the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve has been prepared by the Administration Committee in accordance with section 40B of the Reserves Act 1977. This plan is a statutory document that implements the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Management Strategy and provides for the management of the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve in accordance with the Reserves Act 1977, the Conservation Act 1987 and Conservation General Policy 2005.

This plan has been developed in consultation with the Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum and representatives from tangata whenua, the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board, the local community and other interested groups and individuals. The draft plan was publicly notified on 8 June 2011, 104 submissions were received, and hearings were held in November and December 2011. The Management Plan Approval Committee took these submissions into account when revising the draft plan.

The plan was approved by the Management Plan Approval Committee on 25 June 2012, and will be effective from 1 November 2012 until 2018 (to coincide with the review of the Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan, which was approved in October 2008), but a review (either in part or in full) may occur at any time due to increased knowledge or changes in circumstance.

The Management Plan Approval Committee



Dennis Bush-King  
On behalf of Chief Executive Officer  
Tasman District Council  
(acting under delegated authority)



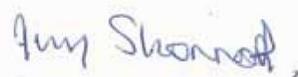
Neil Clifton  
Conservator  
Nelson Marlborough Conservancy  
Department of Conservation



Trevor Norriss  
Councillor  
Tasman District Council  
Board



Ross Hall  
Chairperson  
Nelson Marlborough Conservation



Joy Shorrock  
Iwi representative  
Tiakina te Taiao Limited



Mairangi Reiher  
Iwi representative  
Manawhenua ki Mohua

25 June 2012

By appointment and under delegated authority from the Minister of Conservation, the Director-General of Conservation and the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board.

On 12 August 2015 the Administration Committee (at that time, the Chief Executive Officer of Tasman District Council and the Director Partnerships, North and Western South Island Region, Department of Conservation) publicly notified a partial review of the plan, focusing on four issues relating to access to the reserve.

Eleven submissions were received and the Management Plan Approval Committee held a hearing on 30 October 2015. In November 2015, the Management Plan Approval Committee approved the revised plan to:

- (i) enable access to the reserve for kaitiaki responsibilities and non-commercial cultural activities;
- (ii) provide for an increase in use of Observation Beach bays and a corresponding reduction in use of the adjacent Watering Cove;
- (iii) provide for ongoing use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis on a trial basis; and
- (iv) specify provisions relating to drop off/retrieval of hire equipment from the reserve.

The revised plan took effect on 27 November 2015.

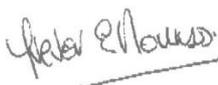
The Management Plan Approval Committee



Lindsay McKenzie  
Chief Executive Officer  
Tasman District Council



Jan Hania  
Director Partnerships  
Department of Conservation



Trevor Norriss  
Councillor  
Tasman District Council



Bob Dickinson  
Chairperson  
Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board



Joy Shorroek  
Iwi representative  
Te Ātiawa o Te Waka-a-Māui

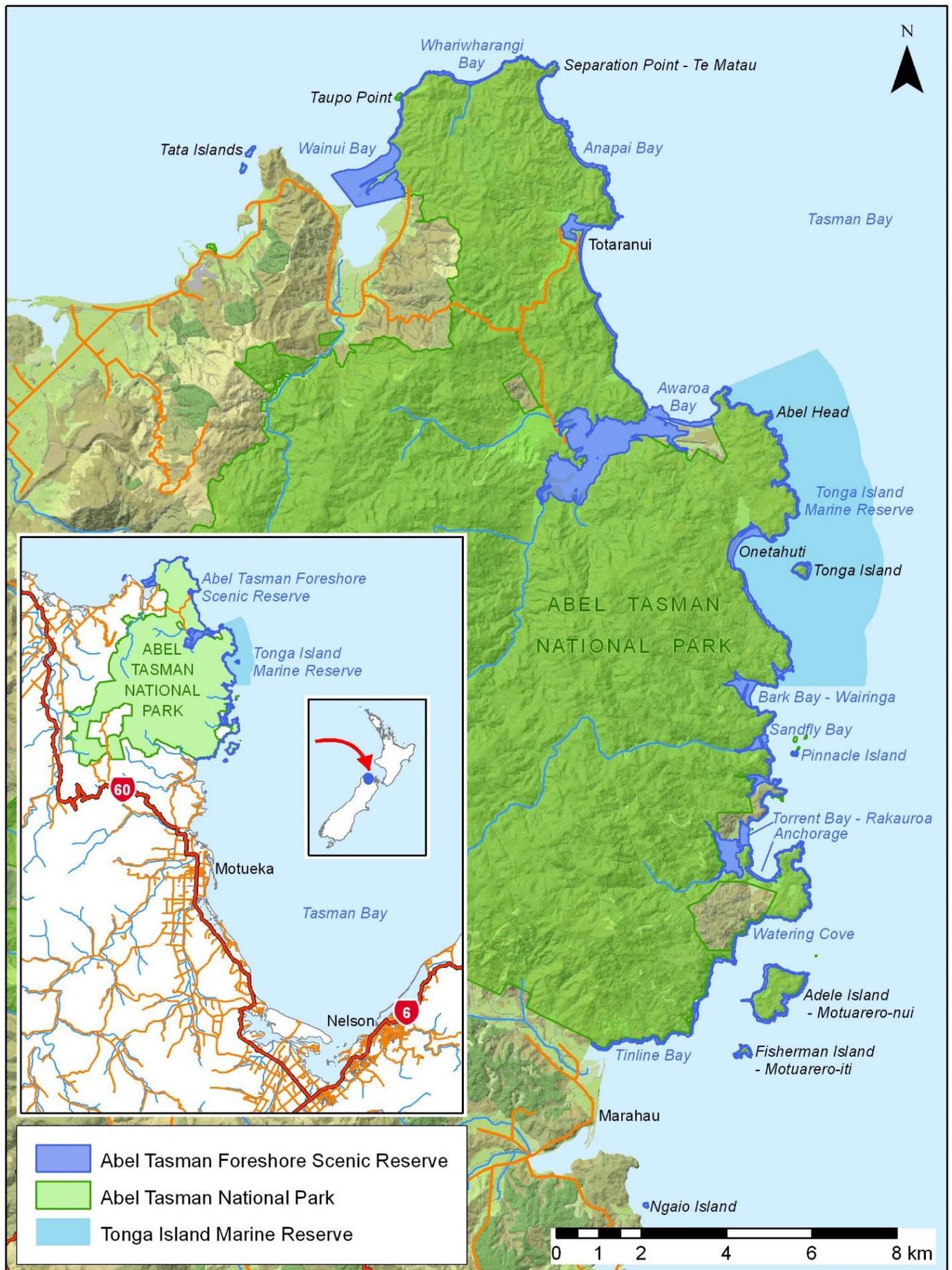


Mairangi Reiher  
Iwi representative  
Manawhenua ki Mohua

27 November 2015

By appointment and under delegated authority from the Minister of Conservation, the Director-General of Conservation and the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board.

Map 1: Location of Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve



# The Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve

---

The Abel Tasman coast is significant in terms of its scenic values. It has a diverse range of coastal landforms, including estuaries, sandy beaches, rocky headlands, rock stacks, islets and islands. Indigenous vegetation within Abel Tasman National Park forms the backdrop for most of the foreshore. The coastal scenery, golden-sand beaches, relatively sheltered coastal waters and bays attract thousands of visitors to the foreshore each year, via the tracks within the national park or from the coastal waters by a variety of vessels. The foreshore is also used and enjoyed by residents and visitors to the numerous private landholdings adjoining the reserve.

After much discussion about the most appropriate way of managing the Abel Tasman coast, the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve ('the reserve') was gazetted as scenic reserve on 25 January 2007, under section 19(1)(a) of the Reserves Act 1977 (by the Minister for Land Information). At the time the reserve was created the Foreshore and Seabed Act 2004 was in force. This vested the ownership of the public foreshore and seabed in the Crown, and the Gazette notice (reserving the land under the Public Works Act 1981) specifically stated that the land would remain vested in the Crown. As a result of foreshore coming under the jurisdiction of the Reserves Act 1977, the Minister of Conservation became responsible for it.

The reserve comprises 774 ha of foreshore, predominantly a narrow strip of land (other than in the estuaries) that lies between the Mean High Water Mark and Mean Low Water Springs, along the Abel Tasman coastline in the northwest of the South Island. It straddles Tasman Bay and Golden Bay, as shown on Map 1 (page 11). A large portion of the reserve adjoins land protected within Abel Tasman National Park, including the foreshore of all the islands in the park. Other parts of the reserve adjoin privately-owned land and reserves administered by Tasman District Council, including areas of formed and unformed road reserve. The central part of the reserve, between Awaroa Bay and Bark Bay/Wairima, is overlain by the Tonga Island Marine Reserve.

The reserve is managed by an Administration Committee (see section 1.2.1 'Administration Committee' and Appendix 3), which arose from recommendations of the Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum (see section 9.1.3 'Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum'). This makes the reserve unique. No other area of foreshore in the country is a scenic reserve under the administration of a committee made up of representatives from a territorial authority and the Department of Conservation.

The primary purpose of designating the foreshore as scenic reserve was to maintain the quality of the visitor experience while protecting the natural features that make the Abel Tasman foreshore so special, including the scenic character of the coastline. The focus of this management plan is three-fold:

- (i) Continuing to allow the public and adjoining landholders to use and enjoy the area as they have for many years, with few constraints
- (ii) Maintaining and enhancing the experiences of visitors and adjoining landholders
- (iii) Reducing and mitigating the effects of visitor use, particularly through management of commercial activities.

# Vision

---

The Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve is revered and safeguarded for all those who come after us.

## Primary Objectives

---

Section 40B(1) of the Reserves Act 1977 states that the purpose of a management plan includes the establishment of objectives for the management of the reserve according to the purpose for which the reserve is classified. Conservation General Policy 13(a)ii and vii (see Appendix 9) also states that this plan should identify planned outcomes, objectives and policies, consistent with the purpose for which the scenic reserve is held; and have regard to integrated management to achieve national conservation outcomes, and to coordinate planning between places covered by other strategies and plans.

The Primary Objectives for the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve are:

1. Effect given to achieving the Vision, and the outcomes for the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land and the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park places
2. Preservation of the natural ecosystems and landscapes, the indigenous species of flora and fauna in their natural communities and habitats, and the natural character of the coastal environment, of the reserve
3. Preservation of public access to and along the Abel Tasman coast, and its bays and inlets and offshore islands (except Tonga and Pinnacle Islands)
4. Protection and preservation or enhancement, for the benefit, enjoyment and use of the public, of the intrinsic values of the reserve as an area possessing great beauty, natural features and landscapes
5. Management and protection of the historical, archaeological, biological and other scientific features of the reserve, to the extent compatible with the other Primary Objectives
6. Regard given to the collective cultural values of the reserve
7. Effect given to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that they are consistent with the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977
8. Integrated management and use compatible with that of adjacent lands and waters (including Abel Tasman National Park, Tonga Island Marine Reserve, the adjacent coastal marine area and privately owned land), to the extent that it is consistent with the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977

## Outcomes at places

---

This plan applies the concept of 'outcomes at places' for the management of the reserve. The reserve is dealt with as a whole and as two places: Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land; and Foreshore Adjacent to National Park (see Part B and Maps 7, 7A, 7B and 7C, pages 109-111). The Outcomes are descriptions of what the two places will be like in 10 years time, which in large part reflect what they are like now (see sections 11.2 Outcome for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land and 12.2 Outcome for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park).

# How to use this plan

---

The plan is divided into two parts:

1. Part A covers matters relating to the reserve as a whole -

Chapter 1 addresses the management planning and legislative context for the reserve. This is followed, in Chapter 2, by an explanation of the significance of the Treaty of Waitangi and customary use in the reserve.

Chapters 3 - 8 identify the values of the reserve, address issues associated with these values, and set out policies and methods for the reserve as a whole.

Chapter 9 deals with issues that the Administration Committee does not have direct control over.

Chapter 10 outlines the requirements in relation to the implementation, monitoring, reporting and review of this plan.

2. Part B covers the detailed management of the two places in the reserve -

Chapter 11 deals with the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land and Chapter 12 deals with the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park. Specific long term outcomes and objectives are identified for each place. Policies and methods are provided where there are specific issues that need addressing in each place, which are in addition to the provisions in Chapters 3 – 8.

To help identify these provisions further, the pages of Chapter 11 (Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land) are golden coloured and the pages of Chapter 12 (Foreshore Adjacent to National Park) are green coloured.

There is also a footnote at the bottom of each page to help identify what part of the plan you are in.

Please note that, when viewing the contents of this plan, it is important to read and consider the plan provisions as a whole. Various objectives, policies and methods may influence the interpretation of other parts of the plan.

# Part A

## Matters relating to Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve as a whole

### 1. Introduction

---

#### 1.1 Management planning and legislative context

The provisions in this plan set out the expectations and guidance as to the overall management of the reserve by the Administration Committee, subject to availability of resources and community support. The process for preparing this plan is set out in Appendix 1.

An explanation of the objectives, policies, methods and outcomes in this plan is provided in Appendix 1, as is an explanation on animal and plant classification.

##### 1.1.1 Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve, adjacent lands and coastal waters

Appendix 1 identifies the physical extent of the reserve, and its relationship to the adjacent lands and coastal waters.

###### *Reserve name*

The reserve was not officially named when it was created in 2007. However, the New Zealand Geographic Board/Ngā Pou Taunaha o Aotearoa subsequently gave notice that the official reserve name was 'Abel Tasman Scenic Reserve' (*NZ Gazette 2009 No. 73, pg 1700*). The Administration Committee intends to submit a proposal to the Geographic Board to alter the English name to 'Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve', along with an appropriate te reo Māori name, in consultation with iwi.

##### 1.1.2 Legislative context

This management plan gives effect to the Reserves Act 1977, the Conservation Act 1987, Conservation General Policy 2005, and the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Management Strategy. The relevant legislation and other statutory documents that affect the management and administration of the reserve are provided in Appendix 2. Where any inconsistencies arise then the legislation shall prevail in the first instance, followed by the Conservation General Policy 2005 and the Conservation Management Strategy.

###### *Bylaws and general authorisation*

Under section 106(3) of the Reserves Act 1977, the Minister of Conservation may make bylaws for the reserve for a number of matters (such as controlling access and other activities). Such bylaws should be necessary for the proper administration and control of the reserve. There are bylaws for the reserve that regulate some activities and allow others that would otherwise be an offence under the Reserves Act 1977, such as walking a dog. This management plan proposes a number of amendments and additions to the bylaws. The Minister is responsible for approving any amendment to the bylaws in accordance with section 108 of the Reserves Act 1977.

There is also a general authorisation, issued by the Administration Committee, that provides for other activities that would otherwise be an offence under the Reserves Act 1977. The activities are: the use of traps, nets or fishing lines; the taking of fish and shellfish; the taking of seaweed; and the taking of driftwood. This management plan proposes some amendments to the general authorisation.

## **1.2 Administration**

### **1.2.1 Administration Committee**

An Administration Committee is responsible for the administration and management of Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve in accordance with this management plan. The Administration Committee comprises the Chief Executive Officer of Tasman District Council and the Conservator of the Nelson Marlborough Conservancy of the Department of Conservation. This statutory body was appointed by the Minister of Conservation under Section 9 of the Reserves Act 1977, with delegated powers and functions to administer and manage the reserve. The Director-General of Conservation has also delegated the powers of a Commissioner (under the Reserves Act 1977) to the committee (see Appendix 3).

The Administration Committee manages the reserve through Tasman District Council's Main Office in Richmond and the Department of Conservation's Nelson Marlborough Conservancy Office in Nelson. Staff from these offices and the Area Offices of the Council and the Department, in Motueka and Takaka, are responsible for day-to-day operational management. Where appropriate, some of the Administration Committee's powers and functions may be carried out by these staff.

### **1.2.2 Management Plan Approval Committee**

The Management Plan Approval Committee is a subcommittee of the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board, formed in accordance with section 6N(2)(b) of the Conservation Act 1987. It comprises the Conservation Board chairperson, the Chief Executive Officer of Tasman District Council, the Conservator of the Nelson Marlborough Conservancy of the Department of Conservation, one Tasman District Council nominee and two nominees from tangata whenua.

The Management Plan Approval Committee was responsible for hearing submissions on the draft management plan, requesting revisions to the plan, and approving the plan (see Appendix 3). Now the plan is approved, the Management Plan Approval Committee's role ceases, unless an amendment to the plan is proposed or until such time as the plan is reviewed (see section 10.1.4 'Review').

### **1.2.3 Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board**

When this plan is approved the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board is responsible for advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority and the Director-General of Conservation on the implementation of this plan, which includes the issuing of concessions for the reserve, in accordance with section 6M(1)(c) of the Conservation Act 1987 and Conservation General Policy 13(e) and (f) (see Appendix 9).

## 2. Treaty of Waitangi

---

### 2.1 Giving effect to the Treaty

Under section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987, the Administration Committee is required to interpret and administer the Reserves Act 1977 to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. However, where there is clearly an inconsistency between the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977 and the principles of the Treaty, the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977 will prevail. This is reflected in the Primary Objectives for the reserve.

This plan is subject to the developing jurisprudence of the courts on the interpretation of the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi and to the outcome of Treaty Settlement negotiations, and should be read together with the Conservation General Policy 2005, particularly Chapter 2; and policies 4.1(e), 4.4(h), 5(c) and 12(d) (see Appendix 9). Any Treaty settlement legislation passed during the lifetime of this plan will be given effect to.

In this plan, the tangata whenua whose rohe (tribal boundaries) cover the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve are Ngāti Tama Ki Te Tau Ihu (Ngāti Tama), Te Ātiawa Ki Te Tau Ihu (Te Ātiawa) and Ngāti Rārua, as kaitiaki manawhenua, and also other iwi who may be recognised by the Crown as being tangata whenua of the reserve.

The Administration Committee needs to work co-operatively with tangata whenua, in a spirit of partnership (based on mutual good faith, co-operation and respect) to achieve the objectives of this plan. A partnership approach recognises the mana of tangata whenua and the desire to work together to maintain and support the reserve.

Tangata whenua need to be given the opportunity to be actively involved in the preservation of the reserve's values, including wāhi tapu and other taonga. The Administration Committee recognises and respects the desire of tangata whenua to exercise kaitiakitanga/customary practices of guardianship, in relation to places or resources that have spiritual or historical and cultural significance for them. Active involvement by tangata whenua can be supported and achieved in a number of different ways. Some of these ways are:

- (i) Providing tangata whenua with information and technical advice
- (ii) Communicating with tangata whenua about proposed work associated with the reserve
- (iii) Consulting tangata whenua regarding the protection of wāhi tapu and other taonga (see section 4.2 'Management of historical and cultural heritage')
- (iv) Establishing partnerships with tangata whenua on restoration and pest management projects, where appropriate (see section 3.2 'Biosecurity and management of threats to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems')
- (v) Enabling customary use by tangata whenua on a case-by-case basis (see section 2.2 'Customary use')
- (vi) Consulting with tangata whenua on concession applications that affect their interests (see section 8.1.3 'Māori cultural values')

- (vii) Developing public information and interpretation which refers to places or resources of spiritual or historical and cultural significance to Māori, in consultation with tangata whenua (see section 4.2 'Management of historical and cultural heritage').

There are two iwi representatives (one nominated by Tiakina te Taiao Ltd<sup>1</sup> and one nominated by Manawhenua ki Mohua<sup>2</sup>) on the Management Plan Approval Committee (see section 1.2.2 'Management Plan Approval Committee'); and three iwi representatives on the Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum (see section 9.1.3 'Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum').

Consultation from the early stages of any proposed undertaking that may affect the interests of tangata whenua and full consideration of their views is essential.

At the time of approving this plan there were claims registered with the Waitangi Tribunal that affect some areas of the reserve, including Adele Island/ Motuareronui, Fisherman Island/Motuarero-iti and some land at Anchorage. In the event that the settlement of any Treaty claim affects the management of the reserve, this should be addressed through the Treaty settlement legislation. The Administration Committee seeks to avoid any actions which would be a breach of the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

### **2.1 Policy**

1. To give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that they are consistent with the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977.

### **2.1 Methods**

1. *Encourage and support tangata whenua involvement and participation in the protection and preservation of the reserve, including the provision of information and cultural advice.*
2. *Regularly communicate with tangata whenua about management work proposed for the reserve.*
3. *Actively consult with tangata whenua throughout the term of this plan regarding its implementation.*

## **2.2 Customary use**

Māori have traditionally gathered plants and animals from the land and water for customary use (the gathering and use of natural resources by tangata whenua according to tikanga). There has been a revival of former traditions and the use of customary materials including, but not limited to: indigenous plants used in weaving and for rongoā/medicine; and indigenous birds and animals for their feathers and for food. Many of the traditional materials and indigenous species remaining today are found on lands administered by Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation, and may be requested by tangata whenua. When tangata whenua wish

---

<sup>1</sup> Represents the iwi of Nelson and Tasman - Ngāti Rārua, Te Ātiawa, Ngāti Tama and Ngāti Koata.

<sup>2</sup> Represents the iwi of Golden Bay - Ngāti Rārua, Te Ātiawa and Ngāti Tama.

to undertake customary use in the reserve they should contact the Department of Conservation's Pou Kura Taiao/Iwi Manager in the first instance.

### 2.2.1 Legislation

The classification of Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve as a scenic reserve under section 19(1)(a) of the Reserves Act 1977 provides a high degree of protection to its indigenous plants and animals. The Reserves Act 1977 states that:

*3(1)(b) 'Ensuring, as far as possible, the survival of all indigenous species of flora and fauna, both rare and commonplace, in their natural communities and habitats...'*

*19(2)(a) '... the indigenous flora and fauna, ecological associations ... shall as far as possible be preserved ...'*

An authorisation (see section 8.4 'Other authorisations for non-commercial activities') is required for customary use, except for fishing and seaweed harvesting (see section 2.2.2 'Fishing (including shellfish) and seaweed harvesting'). Conservation General Policies 2(g) and 4.1(e) (see Appendix 9) set out the criteria by which the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species may be authorised.

In addition, Conservation General Policy 4.4(h) (see Appendix 9) identifies that tangata whenua will be provided with access to the remains of dead marine protected species for customary use consistent with relevant legislation and agreed protocols.

Given the reserve context, both the Administration Committee and tangata whenua, as kaitiaki/guardians, have a responsibility to ensure that indigenous plants and animals are preserved for future generations.

### 2.2.2 Fishing (including shellfish) and seaweed harvesting

Except within Tonga Island Marine Reserve, customary use of fish (including shellfish, whitebait and eels) and seaweed within the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve is provided for under Conservation General Policy 2(g), 4.1(e), 4.1(f) and 4.4(h) (see Appendix 9). Non-commercial customary use is permitted, subject to the general authorisation and relevant fisheries legislation. (See section 3.1.2 'Fishing and the taking of seaweed and driftwood' for non-customary fishing and harvesting.)

When the foreshore was classified as a scenic reserve, the right to take or kill indigenous fauna for commercial fishing purposes was retained as a condition of establishment of the reserve. A concession is required for commercial fishing or taking of seaweed. Any applications to undertake commercial customary takes of fish or seaweed should be declined, in accordance with section 8.3.4 'Coastal fishing'.

### 2.2.3 Dead animals and plants

If an animal of cultural significance to tangata whenua dies, or washes up dead, on the reserve; or a tree of cultural significance to tangata whenua falls onto the reserve, then the materials should be offered to tangata whenua for customary use. Regard needs to be given to Conservation General Policy 4.4(h) (see Appendix 9) as well as protocols developed with tangata whenua, particularly in relation to dead marine mammals.

#### 2.2 Policy

1. To provide for the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species in the reserve by tangata whenua in accordance with Conservation General Policy 2005, and the provisions of this plan.

## **2.2 Methods**

1. Advise tangata whenua wishing to access traditional materials and indigenous species to contact the Department of Conservation's, Nelson Marlborough Conservancy, Pou Kura Taiao/Iwi Manager in the first instance.
2. Applications for the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species(excluding customary fishing and seaweed harvesting)<sup>3</sup> should be approved where they:
  - (i) Comply with relevant legislation, Conservation General Policy 2005 and the provisions of this plan; and
  - (ii) Meet the following conditions:
    - (a) the species to be taken is not a protected species under the Wildlife Act 1953, unless it is already dead;
    - (b) the take is minimal and the protection and preservation of the species is ensured; and
    - (c) as kaitiaki, tangata whenua avoid any adverse effects of customary use.
3. Applications for the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species should be declined where it could adversely affect the viability of a species.
4. Encourage tangata whenua to carry out any proposed customary use outside of the reserve.
5. Applications to undertake commercial customary fishing or taking of seaweed should be declined.
6. Offer to tangata whenua, for customary use:
  - (i) Animals of cultural significance that die, or wash up dead, on the reserve;
  - (ii) Plants of cultural significance that fall onto, or wash up on, the reserve.

## **2.3 Access for kaitiaki responsibilities and cultural activities**

Mana whenua often utilise vessels to access the reserve when exercising their kaitiaki responsibilities and/or to carry out other non-commercial cultural activities. Plan provisions impose restrictions on access relating to mode of transport, time of day, locations, group sizes, recreational zones and outcomes at places. On some occasions, specific exemptions to these plan provisions may be required to enable mana whenua to carry out kaitiaki responsibilities and/or non-commercial cultural activities, such as a dawn ceremony at a location where commercially transported visitor groups are not permitted to land.

### **2.3 Policy**

1. To enable mana whenua to exercise their kaitiaki responsibilities and/or undertake other non-commercial cultural activities, by facilitating access to the reserve for these purposes.

---

<sup>3</sup> Applications are not required for customary fishing and seaweed harvesting as provided for by the general authorisation.

### **2.3 Methods**

1. *The Administration Committee will work together in partnership with mana whenua to facilitate access to the reserve, to enable mana whenua to exercise their kaitiaki responsibilities and undertake other non-commercial cultural activities.*
2. *Prior notice should be given to owners of private land located adjacent to reserve land, where access to the reserve for mana whenua kaitiaki responsibilities and/or non-commercial cultural activities is authorised outside of the conditions stated in Tables 5 and 6.*

## 3. Conservation of natural resources

---

Natural resources include unique species and special places that are appreciated and enjoyed for their intrinsic values, for what they offer to future generations, and for their contribution towards our identity as New Zealanders. Many of the natural features of the Abel Tasman coastline contribute to New Zealand's international reputation as a country with outstanding natural values.

The coastal area is characterised by a mild climate with sea breezes, summer droughts and some winter frosts. Average annual rainfall is between 1400 and 1800 mm, and rain falls on average 125 days per year. The coastline is one of the sunniest in the country, with approximately 2200 hours of sunshine per year. The average maximum summer temperature is 24° C, with overnight minimums of approximately 13° C. Winter temperatures range from an average maximum of 12.5° C to a minimum of 4° C. During late spring and throughout summer the coast can be subjected to strong westerly winds, particularly in the afternoon. The autumn and winter months are generally calmer, but the occasional storm does occur.

### 3.1 Terrestrial, freshwater and marine species, habitats and ecosystems

The Abel Tasman coastal marine environment is relatively free of the modifications and impacts more commonly found around the coastal margins of New Zealand. The estuaries are largely intact and are protected from sedimentation and pollution normally associated with human activities, as the streams and rivers flow from untouched and regenerating forested catchments. The rocky shores are, in most parts of the reserve, backed by a continuous cover of indigenous forest or scrub that is protected within Abel Tasman National Park. This intact ecological continuity between the sea, estuaries, rivers and the land is relatively rare in many parts of New Zealand.

The dominant granite bedrock and a marine environment free of oceanic swells provide habitats and ecological associations of national and international scientific interest. The Abel Tasman coast is a discrete area where the full range of the relatively diverse Tasman Bay and Golden Bay shore types is represented. The nine broad intertidal habitats and substrates that are present in or associated with the reserve are described below. These ecosystems are all connected and inter-related.

#### *(i) Soft shores*

Two types of soft shore habitats are present within the reserve: estuaries; and the open coast beaches and spits. Estuaries are partially enclosed by land, sand spits, or bars, and receive freshwater from streams and salt water from the sea. Within estuarine areas, there are four substrate categories (coarse sand, sand, fine sand and mud) and two plant assemblage types (eelgrass beds and salt marsh/herbfields). Fifteen estuaries are present in the reserve, ranging in size from 290 ha (Awaroa Inlet) to less than one hectare. Open coast beaches and spits are soft shores exposed to the open sea. They are dominated by sand or coarse sand, depending on the degree of exposure or wave action. Soft shore habitats comprise 87% of the reserve (estuaries 67% and open coast 20%).

The estuaries of the reserve are unusual in New Zealand as they are dominated by coarse sediments derived from infertile granite catchments. As a result, these estuaries tend to dry out quickly, with high temperatures and salinity in their sediments, high oxygen levels, a deep anaerobic layer and a low ability to trap organic matter in the form of detritus. Compared with the more common mud-dominated estuaries in most other parts of the New Zealand, the estuaries of the Abel Tasman coast are less fertile and support lower densities of invertebrates.

*(ii) Hard shores*

The granite of the Abel Tasman coast forms boulder, bedrock and cliff habitats, and comprises 13% of the reserve. Limestone substrates are restricted to small areas at Taupo Point and the Tata Islands, comprising less than 1% of the reserve.

*(iii) Marine fish habitats*

Estuarine channels provide habitat for juvenile fish, including commercial and recreational species which are caught as adults offshore. Species most likely to utilise this habitat in the reserve as juveniles are flatfish, yellow-eyed mullet, anchovy, sprat, pilchard, snapper, eagle rays, piper, jack mackerel, kawahai, stargazer and migrating whitebait species. Estuarine channels of varying sizes are located throughout the reserve. The locations of the largest and most extensive estuaries are: Torrent Bay/Rakauroa; Bark Bay/Wairima; Awaroa Inlet; Totaranui; and Wainui Inlet/Takapou Bay.

Rock pools are patchily distributed along the Abel Tasman coast and are relatively uncommon in Tasman and Golden bays. In the reserve, rock pools are located mainly between Watering Cove and Adolphe Point; at Pinnacle Island and Bark Bay/Wairima Reef; from Mosquito Bay to Arch Point; between Ratakura and Skinner Points; from Totaranui northward; and north and south of Taupo Point. Rock pools within the reserve appear to support a relatively low diversity and biomass of fish fauna, and are notable for the absence of species typically present on other sheltered coasts.

*(iv) Indigenous freshwater fish migratory routes and habitats*

Freshwater and brackish waterways and pools are present in, or are associated with, the reserve. These habitats are important to migratory freshwater fish, especially as refuges for fish while they change from a marine to freshwater way of life. The high tide margins of the channels and pools may also provide important spawning habitat for inanga, the most common species in whitebait runs.

All the estuaries/inlets of the reserve have streams or rivers, which provide considerable areas of habitat for whitebait. Good habitat is present in Totaranui, Bark Bay/Wairima, Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and Marahau estuaries, and Wainui and Awaroa inlets. Unimpeded access through estuaries/inlets and into freshwaters upstream is an important feature of the Abel Tasman coast when compared to many other parts of the country. Freshwater fish species recorded from the area are diverse and include giant kōkopu, banded kōkopu, shortjaw kōkopu, red fin bully, inanga, koaro and eels. Most of these species are declining nationwide. The Abel Tasman area is an important habitat for these species, with few brown trout present to compromise the native fish assemblage.

*(v) Indigenous bird habitats*

(see Appendix 5 for the New Zealand threat classification system)

The islands along the Abel Tasman coast are being managed as mammalian pest free areas. Islands with no predators, and generally lower human disturbance than mainland habitats, provide important habitats for birds which use or cross the

intertidal zone within the reserve. Reef herons ('threatened' – 'nationally vulnerable') are regularly observed on the islands and the more isolated parts of the mainland shore, and may breed at Taupo Point and on Pinnacle and Fisherman/Motuarero-iti islands. Blue penguins ('at risk' – declining') breed on Adele/Motuarero-nui, Tonga and Fisherman/Motuarero-iti islands, and along the mainland shore. Spotted shags (not threatened) breed on the Tata Islands and roost elsewhere, including parts of Adele/Motuarero-nui and Fisherman/Motuarero-iti islands. The granite reefs and rocky shores throughout the reserve also provide important habitat for banded dotterel ('threatened' – 'nationally vulnerable') and variable oystercatcher ('at risk' – 'recovering').

Sand spits within the reserve provide important roosting or breeding sites for birds. The largest sand spits are at Awaroa and Wainui inlets. Smaller sand spits are located at Totaranui, Torrent Bay/Rakauroa, Falls River, Bark Bay/Wairima and Marahau. White-fronted terns ('at risk' – 'declining') breed at the Awaroa sand spit, and variable oystercatchers use most of the sand spits in the reserve, including those at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa, Awaroa and Falls River.

The estuaries within the reserve seldom attract the large numbers of waders that utilise the extensive fine-sediment estuaries in the region such as Farewell Spit and Waimea Inlet. However, they do provide important unmodified habitats which may be used as stopover points for migrating waders. They also support approximately 2000 South Island pied oystercatchers ('at risk' – 'declining') and 200 banded dotterels at various times through the year.

Salt marsh and herbfield habitats comprise 23% of the estuarine areas within the reserve. This habitat, spread over 15 estuaries, provides critical habitat for approximately ten pairs of banded rail ('at risk' – 'naturally uncommon'). Other 'threatened' or 'at risk' bird species utilising estuarine habitats are the grey duck ('threatened' – 'nationally critical'), Australasian bittern ('threatened' – 'nationally endangered'), fernbird ('at risk' – 'declining'), and marsh crake ('at risk' – 'recovering').

Table 1, Appendix 5 lists the 'threatened' and 'at risk' bird species that may be found in the reserve.

#### *(vi) Indigenous invertebrate habitats*

Invertebrate habitats within the reserve include granite shores, limestone shores, estuarine flats and sandy beaches. Fifty-three species of invertebrate have been recorded from granite shores within the reserve, compared with 27 species on limestone shores. Granite zonation patterns comprise a high tide zone dominated by two species of periwinkle, an upper tidal zone dominated by barnacles, a midtide zone dominated by barnacles and little black mussels, and a low tide zone dominated by tube worms. The intertidal zonation pattern on limestone shores is not the same as on the granite. On limestone, a different barnacle species dominates the mid-upper tidal level, encrusting tube worms do not form a distinctive zone, and sea lettuce and a bryozoan are more abundant at the lower tidal level. A wide variety of invertebrate species are present on rocky habitats in the reserve, due to the diversity of habitats and environmental variables such as exposure to wave action.

Estuaries within the reserve support large numbers of invertebrate species, including pipi in densities of up to 3000 per m<sup>2</sup> and cockles in densities between 350 and 2700 per m<sup>2</sup>. Large numbers of such animals provide a substantial food source for birds and fish. The greatest numbers of invertebrates have been recorded from the large estuaries, particularly at Awaroa, Wainui and Torrent Bay/Rakauroa.

*(vii) Intertidal indigenous plant communities*

The exposed foreshore within the reserve supports few vascular plants. The beaches are too unstable and the rocky shores too exposed to support a complete plant cover. Forty-four species of intertidal algae have been recorded from rocky and soft shores along the Abel Tasman coast, with red algae and large brown algae forming an almost complete cover near low water in some locations. The red alga *Catenellopsis oligarthra*, recorded from the foreshore at Arch Point (near Tonga Quarry), represents the first South Island record of this species. The 'threatened' ('nationally critical') coastal peppergrass occurs in the splash zone adjacent to the reserve, at one of only four locations in Tasman Bay. The sand binder plants pingao ('at risk' – 'relict') and *Spinifex* (not threatened nationally, but threatened along the Abel Tasman coastline) are present on a few dunes found adjacent to the reserve.

The sheltered estuaries have extensive eelgrass beds and salt marsh/herbfields, and support populations of three 'at risk' species: estuary sedge (declining), coastal musk (naturally uncommon) and native spinach (naturally uncommon). Table 2, Appendix 5 lists the 'threatened' and 'at risk' plants found in the reserve.

*(viii) Marine mammal habitat*

New Zealand fur seals are present along the Abel Tasman coast. Breeding colonies are located at Tonga Island and Pinnacle Island, but seals are regularly recorded on the reserve at Abel Head, Separation Point/Te Matau, Adele Island/ Motuarero-nui and at a number of other locations. Seal numbers range between 300 and 400. The only other seal breeding colonies in the region are in the Marlborough Sounds and on the west coast south of Farewell Spit. The reserve is very important for the local seal population for breeding and as a haul-out area for adults and juveniles.

Whale or dolphin strandings, typically single dead animals, may also occur infrequently on the reserve.

*(ix) Game bird habitat*

Game birds, such as black swan, mallard, paradise shelduck and pūkeko, may occasionally be found on the Abel Tasman foreshore, generally in association with estuarine areas.

### **3.1.1 Protection, restoration and preservation**

The purpose of the Reserves Act 1977 (s3(1)(b)) is: '*Ensuring, as far as possible, the survival of all indigenous species of flora and fauna, both rare and commonplace...*'. In addition, section 19(2)(a) states that: '*... the indigenous flora and fauna, ecological associations, and natural environment ... shall as far as possible be preserved ...*'.

Large parts of the foreshore ecosystems within the reserve are subjected to the effects of the open sea, including regular exposure and inundation by the tides. On exposed soft shores, the physical effects of most activities are temporary or minor, and foreshore habitats are restored with each tide or storm. On exposed rocky shores, the effects of wave action and tides limit the habitat to hardy species which are resilient to disturbance. On sheltered soft shores, within estuaries, species and habitats are vulnerable to disturbance and depletion, despite the effects of regular exposure and inundation by the tides and the dynamic nature of the estuarine ecosystem. The connections between all these ecosystems need to be recognised.

Restoration is largely restricted to those species with national recovery plans, such as coastal cresses and some bird species. For the great majority of species, it is not practical to address their needs directly within individual management programmes.

Consequently, the maintenance and restoration of the full range of indigenous habitats and ecosystems within the reserve will be the primary means of preserving indigenous species. Priorities should be based on the information provided by the Natural Heritage Management System (developed by the Department of Conservation). Other indigenous species may also require special management regimes from time to time, including the re-introduction into the reserve of indigenous species that inhabited the area previously. Protection of bird nesting sites, such as the use of temporary fencing and signage, may be used as needed within the reserve (for example, at the end of Awaroa spit).

The most important management actions for conservation of indigenous plants and animals in the reserve are the control of browsers and predators (see section 3.2 'Biosecurity and management of threats to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems'), and appropriate restrictions on disturbance and harvest (see below). Estuaries are particularly vulnerable to all these threats. Exposed shores are less vulnerable, though still affected by activities such as harvest of driftwood, shellfish and seaweed, and predation of shore birds.

### **3.1.2 Fishing and the taking of seaweed and driftwood**

Recreational fishing, which includes the gathering of shellfish, whitebaiting and eeling, is a popular activity on the Abel Tasman coast. Gathering of seaweed and driftwood from the reserve is also carried out. These activities have historically been carried out along this coastline since Māori first settled here. However, excessive gathering of driftwood or unattached seaweed may deplete the habitat available for invertebrates, which are a food source for birds, and it may alter the stability and natural characteristics of soft shores. Gathering of seaweed that is attached to rocky substrates can have a significant adverse effect on rock pool and rocky shore communities.

The general authorisation issued by the Administration Committee allows for the above non-commercial activities (except where the reserve overlaps with the Tonga Island Marine Reserve, where the taking of any marine life is prohibited), provided they are in accordance with the Fisheries Acts (1983 and 1996), associated legislation (such as the Whitebait Fishing Regulations 1994), and a few conditions associated with the taking of seaweed or driftwood.

The Administration Committee does not propose any change to the general authorisation, other than to allow the use of chainsaws, axes and other like machinery for collecting driftwood. The general authorisation will continue to allow visitors (including people associated with adjacent private land) to fish and gather shellfish, seaweed and driftwood, without the need for individual authorisation<sup>4</sup>.

### **3.1.3 Survey, monitoring and research**

The top priorities are to survey, monitor, and/or undertake research, particularly on indigenous species that are 'threatened' and 'at risk' (see Appendix 5). This will include ascertaining species distributions, numbers and ecology, identifying threats, determining whether active management is required, and if so, establishing management programmes and recovery plans to ensure their preservation. Monitoring of the implementation and effectiveness of these management programmes and recovery plans is also required to ensure that resources are being used efficiently.

---

<sup>4</sup> Section 50 of the Reserves Act 1997 requires a person to have the authorisation of the Administration Committee to take and kill fish, and to use traps, nets and lines in the reserve.

### **3.1 Policies**

1. To preserve the intrinsic natural values of the reserve.
2. To preserve 'threatened' and 'at risk' species and maintain or restore the integrity and functioning of natural ecosystems throughout the reserve wherever possible.

### **3.1 Methods**

1. *Establish, implement and monitor the effectiveness of management programmes for 'threatened' and 'at risk' species, habitats and ecosystems in accordance with:*
  - (a) *This plan*
  - (b) *The Natural Heritage Management System (developed by the Department of Conservation)*
  - (c) *Any applicable Species Recovery Plans (developed by the Department of Conservation).*
2. *Allow for the re-introduction of indigenous species that previously existed naturally in the reserve.*
3. *Protect bird nesting sites from disturbance and/or damage, as necessary.*
4. *Amend the general authorisation to allow the use of chainsaws, axes and other like machinery or implements for collecting driftwood.*

## **3.2 Biosecurity and management of threats to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems**

Many species of introduced flora and fauna are pests that pose serious threats to the survival of indigenous species and the functioning of indigenous ecosystems, both in the reserve and on a national scale. Section 19(2)(a) of the Reserves Act 1977 seeks that '*... the indigenous flora and fauna, ecological associations, and natural environment and beauty shall as far as possible be preserved, and for this purpose ... exotic flora and fauna shall as far as possible be exterminated*'.

The Conservation General Policy 4.2(b) (see Appendix 9) sets out the priorities for pest management programmes: prevention, eradication (where practicable) and control. While the aim is to remove all introduced plants and animals in the reserve, in most cases this is impractical or impossible. Sustained control or localised extermination of high priority pests at key locations, such as islands, is the best use of resources.

The Regional Pest Management Strategy determines priorities for pest control, and funding is addressed through Tasman District Council's Annual Plan. National conservation priorities for pest control developed by the Department of Conservation's will be reflected in pest control plans for the reserve.

Where practicable, pest control in the reserve should be co-ordinated with programmes in the adjoining national park and privately-owned land. The Administration Committee intends to work with local communities and tangata whenua on pest control and restoration projects, where opportunities arise. This includes the Abel Tasman Birdsong Trust/Te Poari Koro Tui o te Tai Tapu, which is

a partnership between concessionaires, the community and the Department of Conservation to protect and enhance biodiversity and improve the visitor experience in Abel Tasman National Park and its environs.

The Minister of Conservation also has the ability to authorise the use of biological control organisms to control animal or plant pests (under section 51A of the Reserves Act 1977). Such introduced organisms may be utilised in the reserve where they will not become a problem themselves or adversely affect any other indigenous organisms, or have a negative impact on any ecosystem.

### 3.2.1 Animal pests

Terrestrial animal pests (such as mustelids, rats, possums and cats) are not permanently resident in the reserve, but they undoubtedly enter the reserve at low water to hunt and feed (or to cross between the mainland and the islands). The major effects of these pests are probably on indigenous plant communities and indigenous animals at or above the reserve boundary (the Mean High Water Mark), especially nesting birds. However, terrestrial animal pests are also likely to browse, scavenge and hunt in the tidal zone, especially in the estuaries.

The low water margin of the reserve is potentially threatened by introduced marine species, such as invasive sea squirts, which have been found (and destroyed) on vessels in Port Nelson and on structures at Port Tarakohe.

Resources should be targeted to control priority animal pests that threaten the highest value areas of the reserve using the most effective available methods. Animal pest control programmes should, for practical reasons, be undertaken as part of or in conjunction with programmes on the adjoining national park or privately-owned lands.

### 3.2.2 Plant pests

The tidal nature of the reserve prevents the establishment of many of the plant pests that affect the adjoining national park and privately-owned lands. The most vulnerable parts of the reserve are the estuary margins. These are threatened by plant pests such as gorse, pampas, tall fescue and introduced species of rush. Deliberate introduction of the mangrove (an indigenous species endemic to the northern parts of the North Island) would threaten the ecological integrity of estuaries within the reserve and should be prevented. The reserve may also be threatened by invasive seaweeds like *Undaria*, estuarine weeds like *Spartina*, and freshwater weeds like *Lagarosiphon*, *Egeria* and *Didymosphenia*.

Eradication of priority plant pests should be sought where possible and practical, otherwise containment and control methods should be used to prevent their spread or establishment in the reserve and less modified areas of the adjoining national park. Monitoring and surveillance should also be carried out to ensure that new plant pest species do not invade the reserve. The help of the public in plant pest surveillance, monitoring and control is encouraged in areas adjoining the reserve, especially on privately-owned land. This includes informing visitors about the risks involved and encouraging them to clean vessel hulls and equipment before mooring in the reserve.

### 3.2.3 Biosecurity

Due to the numbers of visitors that cross the foreshore, there is a significant risk from the introduction of plant seeds, diseases, fungi, algae (e.g. *Didymosphenia*), invertebrates (e.g. the Argentine ant) or marine organisms (e.g. *Undaria* or sea squirt) into the reserve, which may then spread into the adjacent national park. This may occur via vessels, fishing gear and other recreational equipment, particularly where the reserve is the first stop for international visitors.

A Top of the South Marine Biosecurity Partnership has been formed, with representation from Tasman District Council, Nelson City Council, Marlborough District Council, Ministry of Fisheries, Department of Conservation, the aquaculture industry, port companies, tangata whenua and other stakeholders. Biosecurity NZ (Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry) has worked with this partnership and prepared a Marine Biosecurity Strategic Plan for the top of the South Island. Collaboration between the Administration Committee and the Top of the South Marine Biosecurity Partnership should help prevent the introduction, and minimise the spread, of damaging marine species in the Abel Tasman area.

Monitoring and surveillance should also be undertaken to detect any other accidental pest introduction, and immediate action taken to eradicate the pest.

### 3.2.4 Other threats

Human impacts such as trampling, littering and pollution can also threaten reserve values (see section 3.3 'Fire management' regarding the threat of fire). This includes sand dune erosion caused by visitors hauling vessels through the reserve onto adjoining land, damage to estuaries and dunes caused by trampling and vehicles, harvesting of shellfish, and the discharge of sewage or deposition of rubbish. Management of these threats is discussed in section 6.1 'Planning and management for people's benefit and enjoyment'.

Trampling and pollution may also occur from horses and stock animals (see section 6.4 'Animals')

#### 3.2 Policies

1. To control, and where possible and practical eradicate, animal and plant pests throughout the reserve.
2. To provide information to visitors and local landowners about pests and how to prevent new introductions of pests.

#### 3.2 Methods

1. *Where practical, and where they meet the objectives of this plan, co-ordinate pest control programmes with those on the adjoining national park and privately owned land.*
2. *Seek approval from the Minister of Conservation for the use of biological control organisms to control pests, where it is in accordance with the Reserves Act 1977, Conservation General Policy 2005 and this plan.*

3. *Carry out animal and plant pest control or eradication operations consistent with priorities identified in Tasman District Council's regional pest management strategy and the Department of Conservation's priorities for pest control.*
4. *Use whatever method or combination of methods necessary for animal and plant pest control to maintain ecosystem health.*
5. *Prevent the establishment of new populations of plant and animal pests through continued surveillance and the timely removal of any individuals or groups that are found outside their established range.*
6. *Encourage the public to assist in pest surveillance and control, and provide information to the public about preventing the introduction of new pests.*
7. *Work with the Top of the South Marine Biosecurity Partnership to prevent the introduction, and minimise the spread, of damaging marine species.*
8. *Monitor the reserve and adjoining coastal waters for risks to biosecurity and take immediate action to remove any new foreign organism.*

### 3.3 Fire management

Fire is a major threat to estuary margins within and adjoining the reserve, causing the destruction of indigenous plants and animals and the creation of habitats vulnerable to invasion by plant pests. Fire can also pose a significant threat to areas adjacent to the reserve, both the Abel Tasman National Park and the private land. As the Abel Tasman coast can become very dry and carry a very high fire risk at certain times, fire bans are often imposed.

Lighting fires on the foreshore, such as driftwood fires, does occur. Fires are allowed on the foreshore under the bylaws, subject to a number of conditions including a requirement for a permit from the Waimea Rural Fire Authority<sup>5</sup>. Such permits should not be issued except where the Administration Committee considers that a fire is necessary for the management of the reserve or the adjoining national park. The Administration Committee proposes that the bylaws be amended to give effect to this restriction.

The Administration Committee intends to do all it can to minimise any risks from fires on the reserve through enforcement of the bylaws, education, advocacy, facility and visitor management and fire bans. The Waimea Rural Fire Authority sets general management policies for dealing with fires when they occur through the preparation of an annual Fire Plan.

#### 3.3 Policies

1. To protect the values of the reserve from fire.
2. To minimise risks from fires on the reserve.

<sup>5</sup> In the case of the foreshore reserve a permit application should be made to the Department of Conservation's Golden Bay (Takaka) or Motueka Area Offices.

### 3.3 Methods

1. *Take all necessary steps to minimise risks from fires on the reserve.*
2. *Advocate to the Waimea Rural Fire Authority that fire permits are only granted for fires that the Administration Committee considers are necessary for the management of the reserve or the adjoining national park (such as the burning of pest plants).*
3. *Seek an amendment to the bylaws to prohibit fires on the reserve, except those necessary for the management of the reserve or the adjoining national park.*
4. *Actively enforce the bylaws in relation to fires on the reserve.*
5. *Provide information to visitors about the threat of fire to the reserve, the adjacent national park and adjoining private land.*

### 3.4 Geological features, landforms, and landscape

The Abel Tasman foreshore is part of an internationally significant scenic landscape. It is deeply indented with drowned river valleys, forming estuaries, and rocky headlands that separate beaches of coarse golden sand, while offshore there are islands and reefs. The foreshore of the headlands and islands is mostly steep and rocky, with little adjacent flat land. Areas of foreshore in the bays and inlets are gently sloping, with sandy beaches and estuaries. Adjoining underwater topography is mostly gently sloping, with sea depths of less than 20 m for a considerable distance from the shore.

The rock underlying most of the Abel Tasman foreshore is equigranular biotite granite, known as the Separation Point Batholith. A layer of limestone formerly overlaid the granite bedrock. This limestone formation has been almost completely eroded away except for isolated outcrops at the northern end of the reserve at Taupo Point and the Tata Islands. Tilting of the whole granite mass to the east in the past, followed by inundation of the valleys and basins by rising sea levels, have created the inlets and bays that dominate the existing coastal landforms.

The relatively extensive beach and estuary deposits derived from erosion of the granite bedrock have a characteristic golden colour, due to the high levels of quartz and feldspars in the parent rock. Beach and estuary deposits of gravel, sand and mud are present in the larger bays, notably at Totaranui, Awaroa and Torrent Bay/ Rakauroa. Well developed sandy beach ridges and dunes occur at Wainui Bay and Whariwharangi Bay, and smaller sand spits and dunes occur at other bays.

The beds of the estuaries are relatively firm due to the coarseness of the granite sand deposited by the rivers and streams, compared with the more usual soft mudbottomed estuaries elsewhere in the country. Alluvial deposits occur adjacent to the reserve at the heads of the larger bays, such as Totaranui, Awaroa, Onetahuti and Tinline Bay.

Granite shores are uncommon in New Zealand. They are restricted to the Abel Tasman coast, the northwest Nelson coast between Kahurangi Point and the Heaphy River mouth, and Stewart Island. The northwest Nelson and Stewart Island shores are exposed, high-energy shores dominated by species uncommon or absent from the Abel Tasman coast. The granite shores of Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve are low-energy to very sheltered shores.

The large block of Separation Point granite that comprises most of the reserve and the adjoining Abel Tasman National Park separates the landscapes of Tasman Bay and Golden Bay. The interaction between the sea and this mass of granite dictate the landforms of the reserve, creating a dynamic and visually distinctive landscape that is

one of the major attractions for visitors. The low fertility of the granite soils also influences the vegetation type and rates of plant succession on the coastal slopes that adjoin the reserve. The deep mantle of sandy, gravelly, weathered material which overlies the granite basement rock of the foreshore is highly susceptible to erosion. This top layer is prone to slipping during storms, particularly where animal pests or fire have damaged the forest cover in the adjoining national park.

Different rates of weathering of the granite along the length of its coastal exposure and different rates of deposition of granite-derived sediments have created a range of low cliff and reef complexes interspersed with beaches and estuaries. In their various locations, extents and arrangements, the rocky and sandy shores are distinctive, often dramatic and visually appealing. Dazzling white, golden and reddish-brown sand is shaped by tides, waves, streams and wind, forming crescent shaped beaches, sand spits and extensive estuaries.

On rocky shores angular blocks of granite are being sculptured by the sea and wind, creating a diverse range of forms including the well-known Cottage Loaf Rock (near Abel Head) and the great angular slabs of Wharf Rock (near Boulder Point). The localised limestone headlands and islands at Taupo Point and the Tata Islands contrast with the granite landforms, though they are much less extensive. Separation Point/Te Matau headland is the only listed geo-preservation site in the reserve. It has regional importance as a large and prominent headland of visual and landform significance. The big (3-4m) tide differences of the Abel Tasman coast means the foreshore landscape is constantly changing with the ebb and flow of the tides. The rocks, the sands and the muds appear and disappear; corrugated ripples of sand emerge at low tide; rock pools provide refuges for plant and animal life; colours and patterns vary with the seasons, weather and time of day.

Over the length of the diverse Abel Tasman coastline, the foreshore view both seawards and landwards, and the rich detail of the foreshore itself, provides a premium landscape of exceptional beauty. Together, the uncluttered, highly natural, very beautiful and highly dramatic features encompass the essence of the Abel Tasman environment.

### 3.4.1 Development and preservation

Section 19(1)(a) of the Reserves Act 1977 recognises the landscape values of scenic reserves as '*... areas possessing such qualities of scenic interest, beauty, or natural features or landscape that their protection and preservation are desirable in the public interest*'.

Section 19(2)(d) identifies that '*Where ... geological ... features are present in the reserve, those features shall be managed and protected to the extent compatible with the ... purpose of the reserve*'.

The natural features that contribute to the landscape values of the Abel Tasman coast and the accessible yet undeveloped beaches along most of the coastline are important qualities widely appreciated by visitors.

The development and maintenance of visitor facilities, such as wharves, jetties, boat ramps, boat cradles and mooring sites, or the construction of coastal protection structures, can adversely affect beach dynamics and landscape and ecological values. Some facilities and structures are necessary for the safety and convenience of visitors to the reserve. In developing or maintaining these facilities or structures, specific attempts should be made to reduce visual effects (see section 7.2 'Other facilities and structures').

Development on private lands adjoining the reserve, and within the coastal marine area, is subject to controls set out in the Tasman Resource Management Plan, administered by the Tasman District Council. This includes the following objectives:

*'8.2.2 Maintenance and enhancement of the natural character of the margins of ... the coast, and the protection of that character from adverse effects of the subdivision, use, development or maintenance of land or other resources, including effects on landform, vegetation, habitats, ecosystems and natural processes.'*

*'9.1.2 Protection of the District's outstanding landscapes and features from the adverse effects of subdivision, use or development of land and management of other land, especially ... along the coast to mitigate adverse visual effects'*

*'21.1.0 Preservation of the natural character of the coastal marine area, particularly its margins, and including the maintenance of all values that contribute to natural character, and its protection from the adverse effects of use or development.'*

*'21.3.0 Maintenance of the natural character and landscape of the coastal marine area.'*

Due to the proximity of private land adjacent to the reserve, and the potential for development to affect the landscape values of the reserve and the national park, advocacy may be required to seek that any proposed development or activity is sensitive to the environment and appropriate for the location. This also applies to any proposed development or activity in the coastal marine area (see also sections 9.1.4 'Neighbouring lands', 9.1.7 'Coastal waters', and 9.1.9 'Water and land-based commercial activity'). Development within the adjoining national park is managed through the Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan. Integrated management across all the land and marine areas of the coast is a desired outcome.

### ***Coastal processes and climate change***

The potential effects of climate change on the Abel Tasman coastline also need to be recognised. It is likely that increased storm frequency and wind intensity, combined with sea level rise, will result in more extreme erosion and/or accretion events occurring. The impact of these events will vary depending:

- (a) on the location
- (b) the level of existing infrastructure, such as holiday homes on adjacent private land, and
- (c) whether the shoreline is rocky or sandy, particularly sandspits that currently enclose estuaries.

Where there is a need to mitigate the effects of climate change the use of 'soft' engineering solutions is preferred to the use of any hard structures. This will ensure that there is minimal interference to coastal process and will protect the scenic landscape values of the Abel Tasman coastline (see sections 7.2 'Other facilities and structures' and 11.7.2.1 'Coastal protection works').

### **3.4 Policies**

1. To protect and preserve the landscape, geological and scenic values of the reserve.
2. To ensure that any new structure or facility development does not adversely affect beach dynamics, geological values or landscape or scenic features of the reserve.

### **3.4 Methods**

1. *Protect and preserve the geological and landform values of Separation Point/Te Matau, as a geo-preservation site of regional importance.*
2. *Manage the visual, geological and landscape impacts of new structures or facility development in the reserve in accordance with section 7.2 'Other facilities and structures'.*
3. *Advocate that any proposed development or activity on adjacent privately owned lands or in the coastal marine area is sensitive to the environment and appropriate to the location, to protect the coastal landscape of the reserve.*

### **3.5 Ecosystem services**

Ecosystem services cover a wide range of conditions and processes through which natural ecosystems, and the species that are part of them, help sustain and fulfil life. On many public conservation lands, such as the adjacent Abel Tasman National Park, ecosystem services can include water and soil conservation, maintenance and provision of genetic resources, and maintenance and regeneration of habitat.

In the case of the reserve, the key ecosystem services relate to:

- (a) The preservation and protection of the natural coastal environment
- (b) The filtering of discharges from the adjacent lands before they enter the coastal waters
- (c) The protection of adjacent private land from erosion
- (d) The buffering of the ecosystem services within the national park
- (e) Providing potential sources of medicines and other useful substances.

Information is to be provided to the public and adjoining landowners about the benefits that these ecosystem services provide.

### **3.5 Policy**

1. To recognise and protect the ecosystem services of the reserve.

### **3.5 Methods**

1. *Recognise the value of ecosystem services when making decisions about the management of the reserve.*
2. *Ensure that the natural functioning of coastal processes is maintained.*
3. *Provide information about the benefits of ecosystem services.*

## 4. Historical and cultural heritage

---

### 4.1 History

#### 4.1.1 Māori history

For over 700 years people have been visiting the Abel Tasman coast, with Māori occupation and traditions extending back to the early iwi Rapuai, Waitaha, Ngāti Wairangi and Ngai Tara, who occupied the coast before 1600. They were displaced by Ngāti Tūmatakōkiri until they were in turn defeated by Ngāti Apa and Ngāti Kuia in the late 1790's.

The earliest recorded contact between Māori and European in New Zealand occurred on 18 December 1642, when the Dutch explorer Abel Tasman anchored his two ships near Wainui in Golden Bay/Mohua. He subsequently lost four crew members in a skirmish with the local Māori at that time, Ngāti Tūmatakōkiri. When Dumont d'Urville visited in 1827, Māori habitations were observed and visited in several bays along the Abel Tasman coastline and inland, but only a few people appeared to be in residence. However, at that time the local tribes (Ngāti Apa and Ngāti Kuia) had recently been involved in a disastrous attack on Kapiti Island (1825-26) where many had been killed or captured. The survivors who had managed to escape back to Tasman Bay were living under serious threat of retributive raids from the north. These came two years later (about 1828-29) with the raupatu/conquest by Ngāti Rārua, Ngāti Tama and Te Ātiawa, who then settled the area along and adjacent to the Abel Tasman coast.

Records and sketches from Tasman's and d'Urville's visits, later journeys by other explorers, particularly Heaphy and Barnicoat (1842), and the first settlers, provide many details of the daily life of Māori in the area.

The foreshore and adjacent land contain over 120 known sites of Māori occupation, including coastal villages, seasonal camps, garden areas and food storage pits. Natural and human disturbances occasionally reveal new sites. The coast has extensive wāhi tapu and urupā areas, most of which are recorded in the New Zealand Archaeological Association files, but none are registered by the Historic Places Trust.

There are six, relatively small, formerly fortified pa sites known on the Abel Tasman coast, and several historically recorded, defined villages at Taupo Point and on the southern coast. Areas of general occupation, associated with shell middens, cooking areas and house floors, are present on soft-shore areas around estuaries, stream mouths and behind beaches. The most substantial of the sites and the largest concentrations of recorded sites are in and around the major bays of Torrent Bay/ Rakauroa, Bark Bay/Wairima, Awaroa and Totaranau.

Archaeological excavations at some sites show a dependence on estuarine shellfish species with surprisingly little evidence of fish remains, even though the coastal waters were rich in seafood. Certainly, in early colonial times, traditional Māori practices of drying fish were taking place at Marahau, Riwaka and near Motueka.

On the northern coastline, on the stony beach to the west of Taupo Point, there are intertidal areas that have been cleared of rocks. It is likely that this was done by the local Māori to provide for easier landing of waka.

## 4.1.2 European history

In 1841, the Astrolabe Roadstead/Whenuakura/Te Karetu was the initial anchorage of the three New Zealand Company ships seeking a suitable site for the Nelson settlement. However, it was the early to mid 1850s before land was purchased by European settlers on the Abel Tasman coast.

The early European settlers felled the lowland forests for timber and cleared the land for farming in several bays, particularly along the northern parts of the coast around Totaranui, Awaroa, Whariwharangi and Wainui. They relied on coastal shipping for communication and supplies, with goods, stock and passengers being ferried ashore in small boats and lighters. Wharves weren't usually built due to the exposed nature of the shorelines.

Other industries included shipbuilding (at Awaroa and Torrent Bay/Rakauroa), bark-stripping for tanning (at Bark Bay/Wairima) and quarrying at Tonga Bay. The Cawthron steps in front of Nelson Cathedral and the Wellington Post Office were built using granite blocks from Tonga Quarry. Several small settlements were established, including Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and Awaroa. These settlements remain today as privately-owned land adjoined by Abel Tasman National Park and the reserve.

There are also the remains of the historic ship, the Venture, in the eastern arm of the Awaroa Inlet, near the mouth of Venture Creek. This wooden ketch was the last of the vessels built by William Hadfield at Awaroa from local kahikatea, rata and beech. She was launched in 1906 and used for local shipping for many years before being left to rot in the inlet. Parts of the hull can still be seen at low tide. Piles of rock ballast that was discharged from loading scows are also visible at low tide in Awaroa Inlet.

## 4.1.3 Recent history

From the 1920s the Abel Tasman coast became popular with holidaymakers who gradually established baches in many of the sandy bays. Later, some of these occupied areas became part of the national park. From as early as the 1890s people considered protecting the Abel Tasman coast. The first firm proposals were made in the 1930's. In 1936, Perrine Moncrieff set aside her property near the Astrolabe Roadstead/Whenuakura/Te Karetu as a private reserve and began a concerted campaign to set aside the whole area as a national park. The tercentenary of Abel Tasman's 1642 visit provided the final impetus to her efforts and the Abel Tasman National Park was created in 1942, as a permanent memorial to his visit. Sixty-five years later, the adjacent foreshore became a scenic reserve in 2007.

## 4.2 Management of historical and cultural heritage

### 4.2.1 Protection of historic places

Sections 3(1)(a)(v) and 19(2)(d) of the Reserves Act 1977 seek to preserve and manage historic, cultural and archaeological features or values on the reserve. Section 94(1)(m) makes it an offence to damage the historic features in the reserve, without written authorisation from the Administration Committee.

In accordance with the Historic Places Act 1993, the Administration Committee wishes to prevent the accidental destruction of any historic place (including archaeological sites), and will obtain an authority from the New Zealand Historic Places Trust for any site restoration or modification that is proposed. A resource consent may also be

required from Tasman District Council, in accordance with rules in the Tasman Resource Management Plan.

It is also important that any previously unknown sites, revealed by natural processes or development, are identified and recorded (into the New Zealand Archaeological Association Site Recording Scheme) by a qualified archaeologist. This will ensure that these sites can be protected from inadvertent damage.

The historic places (including archaeological sites) within or adjacent to the reserve are significant because they occur on a continuous piece of coast in public ownership, managed by Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation. All these historic places have legal protection under the above legislation (or, within the adjoining national park, under section 4(2)(c) of the National Parks Act 1980).

Regular monitoring of known historic places (including archaeological sites) in the reserve should be carried out by a qualified archaeologist, along with active management of those sites where appropriate. Wherever possible, works that might threaten a historic place should be re-evaluated to avoid or at least minimise any disturbance. Any works that may affect any archaeological site must be referred to the NZHPT regional archaeologist for advice as early as possible in the planning process.

To promote long-term site protection, and where protection is practicable, Conservation Plans should be prepared for the historic places (including archaeological sites). These Conservation Plans should be consistent with those developed by the Department of Conservation for the national park, but specific to the values and nature of the historical, cultural and archaeological resources of the reserve. Where a Conservation Plan relates to an archaeological site this must be prepared by a qualified archaeologist.

Identification and protection of historic places (including archaeological sites) on the reserve needs to continue, using as a guide the priorities and procedures set out in the Department of Conservation's Historic Resource Strategies, and including (if necessary) consultation with tangata whenua and/or the NZHPT regional archaeologist.

The protection of historic places (including archaeological sites) presents a particular challenge because increased public use of the reserve (and adjoining national park) and natural processes (particularly coastal erosion) are significant threats to these sites (see section 4.2.5 'Threats'). Long-term protection of these sites is consistent with that carried out in the adjacent national park, as the historic and archaeological values of these places may be significantly diminished or lost. The Administration Committee will need to receive advice from qualified archaeologists and decide, on a case-by-case basis, whether to allow natural processes to occur or whether to protect sites that have become exposed through natural processes. They need to have regard to section 19(2)(d) of the Reserves Act 1977, which states that historic and archaeological features shall be protected to the extent compatible with the primary purpose of the reserve. Protection may include closing access to sites and by placing special conditions on concessions granted within an area with historic or archaeological values.

#### **4.2.2 Protected objects**

The Protected Objects Act 1975 provides for the protection of certain objects, including regulating the export of protected New Zealand objects, and establishing and recording the ownership of ngā taonga tūturu. Any taonga tūturu found anywhere in New Zealand is initially regarded as being the property of the Crown. However, any person may subsequently make a claim to the Māori Land Court for ownership, possession or custody of any taonga tūturu. Māori have protocols for action following

the discovery of any taonga tūturu. This could include reburial in the place they were found, removal to a marae, or placement in a museum, or urupā.

Protected New Zealand objects are important to our understanding of archaeological and historical sites. Under section 94(1)(f) of the Reserves Act 1977, it is an offence to remove any protected New Zealand object or relic from the reserve, without written authorisation from the Administration Committee.

### **4.2.3 Māori sites**

Tangata whenua should be involved in the identification, preservation and management of any historical, cultural or archaeological sites of significance to them, in accordance with Conservation General Policy 5(c) (see Appendix 9). Tangata whenua need to be given the opportunity to care for these sites in traditional ways, which in some cases means keeping the location of sites confidential. The Administration Committee intends to ensure that there is an opportunity for a representative to be present at archaeological excavations or surveys.

Ngā taonga tūturu and other archaeological evidence of Māori settlements have been found in almost every bay and on many significant headlands in or adjacent to the reserve. Protection of some of these sites can present a challenge to the Administration Committee because of the dynamic nature of the coastal environment. Natural processes, particularly coastal erosion, are a threat to retaining sites such as urupā/burial ground. If kōiwi/human bones are exposed tangata whenua should be consulted over the management of the exposed kōiwi. This usually results in the area being temporarily protected from the public and further erosion, until the bones can be removed for reburial. If tangata whenua wish to allow the natural erosion to continue, access to the area may be restricted until that process is complete and the kōiwi have been removed naturally.

### **4.2.4 European sites, relics, and protected New Zealand objects**

European relics, historic places (including archaeological sites), and protected New Zealand objects, which are mostly found within the adjacent national park, are important to our understanding of more recent history from the period of European settlement and farming on the Abel Tasman coast. They include: buildings; sheep dips; pack tracks; bush tramways from logging; quarry workings at Tonga Bay, the Tata Islands and Ngaio Island; and a steam engine used to mill beech bark at Awaroa for the tanning industry. Evidence of this early European settlement and use, such as old bottles and crockery, may be exposed in the reserve by coastal erosion.

### **4.2.5 Threats**

Both natural processes and human impacts can easily damage historic places (including archaeological sites). These include erosion, earthquakes, fire, decay, neglect, and increasing pressures of visitor use and facilities. These effects need to be avoided where possible. In such circumstances, the Administration Committee must have regard to sections 3(1)(a)(v) and 19(2)(d) of the Reserves Act 1977 and ensure sites and objects of archaeological and historic interest are preserved as far as possible.

Any new structure or facility development should avoid or minimise impacts on historic places (including archaeological sites) (see section 7.2 'Other facilities and structures').

#### 4.2.6 Interpretation

Interpretation and information can enhance visitor understanding of Māori and European historic places and can help the visitors gain an appreciation for the historical and cultural values preserved in the reserve. Tangata whenua, or the descendants of early European settlers, should be consulted when developing any information or interpretation that refers to places or stories of spiritual, historical or cultural significance to them. Māori place and species names and te reo Māori should be used, where appropriate and attention drawn to Māori values.

Information should be made available to visitors about the requirement not to interfere with or damage the historic features of the reserve, or to damage or remove protected New Zealand objects or relics in the reserve; the need to inform the Administration Committee of any items found; and about the cultural importance of protected New Zealand objects. Any on-site interpretation is likely to be located outside the reserve, on land above the Mean High Water Mark.

#### 4.2.7 Memorials

Conservation General Policy 5(g) (see Appendix 9) allows for monuments, pou whenua, plaques or other memorials to be sited in the reserve where they are associated with people, traditions or events of exceptional importance in New Zealand or conservation history. They should be consistent with the character of the place and should not be attached to or engraved into natural features. There are three existing plaques that are located on rocks near the boundary between the reserve and Abel Tasman National Park:

- (i) The Astrolabe Plaque near Observation Beach, a New Zealand Historic Places plaque that recognises the anchoring of Dumont D'Urville in the Astrolabe Roadstead/Whenuakura/Te Karetu in January 1827
- (ii) The Medland/Wratt Memorial at Medlands Bay, which is in memory of Vernon Medland and Gerald Wratt
- (iii) The Brereton Memorial at Brereton Cove, which is in memory of William and Jack Brereton who drowned off the coast in April 1890.

It is likely that any new memorials would be located outside the reserve, on land or structures above the Mean High Water Mark.

#### **4.2 Policies**

1. To actively work with tangata whenua to manage and protect wāhi tapu and Māori cultural, historical and archaeological sites, relics and ngā taonga tūturu in the reserve.
2. To actively manage and protect cultural, historical and archaeological values in the reserve, in accordance with relevant legislation and any Conservation Plan, and to minimise the impacts of visitors on cultural, historical and archaeological sites.
3. To improve the awareness of visitors to the reserve of the cultural, historical and archaeological values.

#### **4.2 Methods**

1. *Prior to any restoration or modification of a historic place, or any proposed activities involving significant earthworks or ground disturbance, carry out an archaeological assessment and avoid damage to sites where practicable, or obtain an authority to modify the site where necessary, and provide for tangata whenua input and involvement where archaeological impacts to Māori sites are likely.*
2. *Carry out archaeological and historical surveys within the reserve and, where possible, actively protect, restore and interpret historic places and ngā taonga tūturu in line with the Reserves Act 1977, Historic Places Act 1993, the Protected Objects Act 1975, and the Department of Conservation's national and Conservancy Historic Resources Strategies.*
3. *Develop Conservation Plans in consultation with a qualified archaeologist, where protection is possible, for historical, cultural and archaeological resources in the reserve, consistent with any Conservation Plans for the national park, to promote long-term site protection.*
4. *Any new archaeological sites should be identified and recorded (into the New Zealand Archaeological Association Site Recording Scheme) by a qualified archaeologist.*
5. *Where preservation of historical or cultural values conflicts with the primary purpose of the reserve, evaluate each case carefully on its own merits but ensure sites and objects of archaeological interest are protected as far as possible, and mitigation measures are implemented where damage cannot be avoided.*
6. *Inform tangata whenua of the discovery of any taonga tūturu in the reserve and, subject to the requirements of the Protected Objects Act 1975, seek their advice on the appropriate protocols for its care.*
7. *Involve tangata whenua in the identification, preservation and management of historical and cultural sites of significance to them.*
8. *Provide for a representative of tangata whenua to be present at archaeological excavations or surveys of Māori sites.*
9. *Consult with tangata whenua regarding the management of Māori archaeological, cultural and historical values on the foreshore of Fisherman Island/Motuarero-iti and Adele Island/Motuarero-nui.*
10. *Consult with relevant authorities and tangata whenua where kōiwi/ human bones are exposed by coastal erosion and provide for the appropriate management and protection of those areas and the remains.*
11. *The impacts of visitor use or new structures or facility development on historic places should be avoided or minimised, including the use of temporary closures to public access.*
12. *Provide information to visitors about the historical and cultural values of the reserve, and the prohibition on removing any protected New Zealand object or relic from the reserve.*

13. *Consult with tangata whenua where interpretation of a Māori site or tradition is proposed to ensure that references to Māori values and the use of te reo Māori are appropriate.*
14. *Memorials that commemorate the historical association of a site, an individual, and/or events, of exceptional importance in the history of the reserve may be placed in the reserve, provided the memorial is not attached to or engraved into a natural or archaeological site feature.*

## 5. Natural hazards

---

The reserve is subject to a number of natural hazards that are outside the control of the Administration Committee. These are predominantly due to the constantly changing tides and weather of this coastal environment. Such hazards include: rock falls from cliffs above the reserve; high tides preventing access across estuaries; and large waves preventing access to and from the reserve by sea.

Conservation General Policy 8 addresses natural hazards. Policy 8(b) (see Appendix 9) states that when a high level of risk to people, places or property from a natural hazard on the reserve has been identified, a hazard and risk management plan should be prepared. A Hazard Management Plan for the Totaranui Campground (adjacent to the reserve) is to be prepared by the Department of Conservation in accordance with the management plan for Abel Tasman National Park. The reserve in front of the campground should be included in this Hazard Management Plan, as in an emergency access may only be available via across the reserve.

Tasman District Council has a joint Civil Defence and Emergency Management Plan with the Nelson City Council. This plan covers all aspects of emergency management in Nelson/Tasman, including the coastal marine area (e.g. storm surge, tsunami) to ensure the effective delivery of civil defence actions.

Information should be provided to visitors to ensure that they are aware of the potential natural hazards they may encounter in the reserve, particularly the tide and sea conditions that can prevent them from crossing estuaries on foot. In addition, under section 19(2)(b) of the Reserves Act 1977, the Administration Committee has the power to restrict entry of the public to the reserve for their protection and control. Restrictions may be put in place where a hazard cannot be removed or minimised, such as eroding cliffs with the potential for rock falls onto the reserve. Wherever possible, the Administration Committee will endeavour to maintain access across the reserve to adjoining private land.

Nevertheless, visitors to the reserve are responsible for their own decisions on the risks they are prepared to take arising from natural hazards. This is reflected in Conservation General Policy 8(d) (see Appendix 9). Visitors are also responsible for ensuring that they have the level of skill and competence and the equipment required to cope with those risks. Similarly, concessionaires are responsible for the health and safety of their clients when visiting the reserve.

### 5 Policy

1. To identify and be prepared for natural hazards in the reserve.

### 5 Methods

1. *Ensure that Totaranui Beach is included as part of the Hazard Management Plan developed for Totaranui Campground by the Department of Conservation.*
2. *Consider closing parts of the reserve, on a temporary basis, to public access (while endeavouring to maintain access for adjoining private landowners), where a natural hazard poses an imminent danger to the public and it cannot be removed or reasonably avoided by other means.*
3. *Provide information to visitors regarding natural hazards in the reserve and the need for them to be responsible for their own decisions and actions.*

## 6. People's benefit and enjoyment

---

Activities in the national park, on other areas of adjoining land, and in the coastal marine area have impacts on the reserve's values and visitor use and experiences. This management plan provides policies for the direct management of activities and effects within the reserve boundary, and also indicates where the Administration Committee can advocate for the protection and preservation of the reserve in relation to other planning and legislative mechanisms.

Management of activities and effects within Abel Tasman National Park are guided by the Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan. Activities on other adjoining lands and the coastal waters are controlled by Tasman District Council through the Resource Management Act 1991, the Tasman Resource Management Plan and Navigation Safety Bylaws. Integrated management of the national park, the foreshore reserve, adjoining lands and coastal waters is vital to the effective management of the whole of the Abel Tasman coast.

### 6.1 Planning and management for people's benefit and enjoyment

Scenic reserves are areas possessing scenic interest, beauty, natural features or landscapes that are protected and preserved in perpetuity for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, enjoyment and use of the public. People of all ages and backgrounds visit Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve for a variety of reasons: to be inspired by the scenery, unique features, sights and sounds of wild nature; to enjoy relatively undeveloped beach environments; to undertake activities such as swimming, sunbathing, boating and picnicking; to experience solitude, remoteness, peace and natural quiet; to experience nature on nature's terms; to experience the challenge of being self-reliant and adventurous; to explore, enjoy and learn about nature; to share experiences; to gain access to areas on adjoining lands, such as Abel Tasman National Park and privately-owned land; to maintain active, healthy lifestyles; and to 'get away from it all'.

However, visitors can have an adverse impact on the very qualities that attract them to the reserve in the first place and the enjoyment of some can be at the expense of others. A range of activities, behaviours, facilities, services, and large groups, can erode enjoyment of the reserve in its natural state and as a place of refuge from commercialism and urbanisation.

The Abel Tasman coast has attracted visitors for over a century and businesses have been established to cater to their needs and enhance their experiences. This commercial activity has become part of the experience of visitors to the foreshore (see section 8.2 'Recreation concessions').

This plan recognises that visitors wishing to enjoy the reserve can have different expectations, which may be incompatible with each other. The plan seeks to protect and preserve the reserve in its natural state for future generations and to maintain what is distinctive about recreation in this reserve, as well as facilitating visitor benefit, use and enjoyment while respecting the rights of other visitors to do the same.

#### *National context*

The Abel Tasman coast, characterised by its magnificent coastal scenery and the Abel Tasman Coast Track (in the adjacent national park), features prominently in New Zealand tourism promotions, to the extent that it has become a national and international icon. It has a high level of importance for New Zealanders as a coastal holiday destination. It also makes a significant contribution to the economy, and to the marketing of the country as a worldwide tourism destination. For these reasons, the

Abel Tasman Coast Track (and its association with the reserve) has been identified as a national priority site for visitor destination management.

To visitors, the key qualities of the reserve are good weather, easy access, clean and undeveloped golden beaches, blue sea, a backdrop of forested coastal slopes and islands, and an adjacent marine reserve. The combination of these features within publicly administered lands is unique in the region and rare in the country. It is therefore of utmost importance to preserve these values, and the reserve's intrinsic values, as far as possible whilst allowing for appropriate visitor use and continued access to private lands adjacent to the reserve.

Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve provides part of a range of visitor experiences available both regionally and nationally. At both a national and international level the reserve is strongly associated with enjoyment of the beach environments, water-based activities, such as kayaking, and easy walking in the adjoining national park. This international profile, along with its ease of accessibility and closeness to the well developed tourist destinations of Nelson, Motueka and Golden Bay, results in an expectation that the reserve is managed to cater for a relatively high number of visitors.

The foreshore is also an integral part of the character of the adjacent private land, and is important for the provision of easy access to those landholdings with no road access.

The reserve, adjacent national park and coastal marine area need to be managed in an integrated manner, with consideration for the adjacent private land, for a level of recreational use and access that is relatively high. But there is a clear intention to provide a predominantly natural visitor experience while still providing for easy motorised and non-motorised vessel access to the Abel Tasman coast. Other important qualities and visitor experiences also need to be protected, such as: naturalness, including natural quiet; a sense of history; and an ability to appreciate the natural environment. The balance between use and protection of the reserve permeates this management plan and guides the visitor management approach, Recreational Zones and concession management regimes described below and in the following sections.

### *Local context*

Tasman District Council seeks to provide recreation opportunities which meet the expressed needs and aspirations of present and future communities. Tasman District Council manages a number of reserves, such as esplanade, recreation and local purpose reserves, including several reserves adjacent to Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve (see Appendix 2). Tasman District Council's objectives for the provision and management of reserves are contained in the Tasman District Recreation Strategy (1996) and in reserve management plans.

#### **6.1.1 Access and use**

The reserve is used for access and for recreational activities by visitors to the national park, and by residents of and visitors to private landholdings. The reserve is also a destination for picnics, or a base for boating activities. The Coast Track within the adjoining national park is the busiest Department of Conservation multiday track in the country, receiving approximately 150,000 visitors a year. More visitors visit the reserve from the sea (by boat, kayak or other vessels) than from the land (by walking), and over 90% of visitors to the national park use the coastal environment.

The beaches, and the Coast Track within the adjoining national park, are the main attractions for visitors. During the busiest part of the summer holiday season there are about 2000 people entering the southern part of the adjacent national park per day, most of whom are likely to visit the reserve. There are approximately 1200 visitors to Totaranui per day at the height of summer, most also using the reserve. From late

December to early February Totaranui is full to capacity: 850 visitors per night in the campground; 40 in the Great Walk campsite; and 40 in Ngarata Homestead. Data for visitor use of the foreshore associated with the adjacent private land (e.g. Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and Awaroa) are not available.

Most areas in the reserve, including some that are not readily accessible on foot from the Coast Track, are accessible from the sea by commercial vessels, freedom kayak rentals, canoes, private vessels and bareboat charters. The reserve is also accessible by vehicles from road-ends at Wainui Inlet, Totaranui, Awaroa Inlet and Marahau, and by foot from the adjacent national park or private land. Commercial vessel and road transport services link with other regional transport services to places such as Nelson and Takaka. Marahau and Kaiteriteri are the major departure points for commercial vessels providing transport services into the reserve. Totaranui, Marahau, Kaiteriteri, Port Motueka and Nelson are also launching points for private vessels.

Visitation is highly seasonal, with the four-week period from Christmas to the last week of January accounting for more than 20% of annual use. Overall, about 80% of use occurs in the six summer months (November to April). The vast majority of visitors use the reserve as part of a day trip. Most visitor activity occurs along the coast between Marahau and Totaranui as this is where the commercial vessels mainly operate. Visitors can reach almost any part of the reserve within two hours by sea from either Totaranui or Marahau. Commercial and recreational water-based activity has grown considerably over the last ten years, with nearly 400 vessels entering the Abel Tasman coast on a peak day.

For visitors to the Abel Tasman coast during summer, most of their activities are associated with use of the beaches for: relaxing, walking, swimming, sightseeing, sunbathing, picnicking and water taxi trips. Other popular activities associated with use of the foreshore are boating, kayaking, sailing, water-skiing, wind surfing, fishing, shellfish collecting, and dog-exercising. As the landward boundary of the reserve is essentially the high tide mark, staying overnight does not occur in the reserve, other than on vessels anchored in the reserve. Most overnight stays occur on the adjoining national park, private land, or private vessels anchored in the coastal marine area within many of the sheltered estuaries and beaches.

The public has a general freedom of entry and access to the reserve, but the Administration Committee also has the ability to limit access, if necessary:

- (a) To protect the natural, cultural and historic values of the reserve
- (b) For the protection and control of the public using the reserve.

Closures may be on a permanent basis (see section 12.4.2 'Seals'), or on a temporary basis, such as for the protection of an archaeological site (see section 4.2.3 'Māori sites') or a bird nesting area (see section 11.4.1 'Protection'). Wherever possible, the Administration Committee will endeavour to maintain access across the reserve to adjoining private land. The Administration Committee may impose charges to use public facilities, such as boat ramps and moorings.

### **6.1.2 Visitor experiences**

The sheltered bays and beaches are by far the busiest parts of the reserve, with up to 700 visitors per day at Anchorage and 1200 visitors at Totaranui on an average January day. Many families and young people, including international travellers, visit the Abel Tasman coast and many New Zealand families go to campgrounds such as Totaranui and dwellings on private land adjoining the reserve for their annual Christmas holidays year after year. School groups also use the reserve and national park regularly. People live in or visit houses or private accommodation on private land adjacent to the reserve,

using the reserve for access, enjoyment and recreation. The range and type of visitors engender a friendly sociable atmosphere in the reserve.

The intent of this management plan is that the reserve provides visitors with an experience where they:

- (a) Can choose from a variety of opportunities to enjoy a coastal environment that ranges from areas that are free from commercial use, quiet, completely natural and unmodified, to areas where commercial use is evident, and there is a high level of visitation and social interactions, with associated noise, modifications and structures
- (b) Can enjoy recreational activities in a safe environment
- (c) Can safely access the adjacent national park, private land and coastal marine area (with some restrictions)
- (d) Can enjoy an area without the intrusion of commercial vending of food, drink, or other services, such as the hiring of recreational equipment from the reserve itself.

### 6.1.3 Recreational Zones

The Administration Committee seeks to reconcile the potentially conflicting demands of protecting and preserving the values of the reserve while continuing to allow visitors to enjoy those values and allow private landowners access to their properties. For example, there can be so many visitors engaged in a particular activity in a certain place that the quality of the experience for each participant, or for other visitors, is adversely affected. The provision of access and servicing for visitors, and private land owners, should be balanced against the need to ensure that visitor experiences and natural values are not adversely affected. Otherwise visitor expectations, which have been raised by iconic images of the Abel Tasman coastline - of beaches possessing outstanding scenic beauty and few people - will not be met.

Provisions in this management plan attempt to deal with these conflicts by controlling visitor access and use, and commercial activities in the reserve, which are consistent with the controls that have already been put in place by the Abel Tasman National Park management plan. This provides for integrated management across public conservation lands that is complementary to and does not detract from the values of the national park, in accordance with Conservation General Policy 13(c) (see Appendix 9). Four Recreational Zones have been developed for the reserve (see Map 2, page 47):

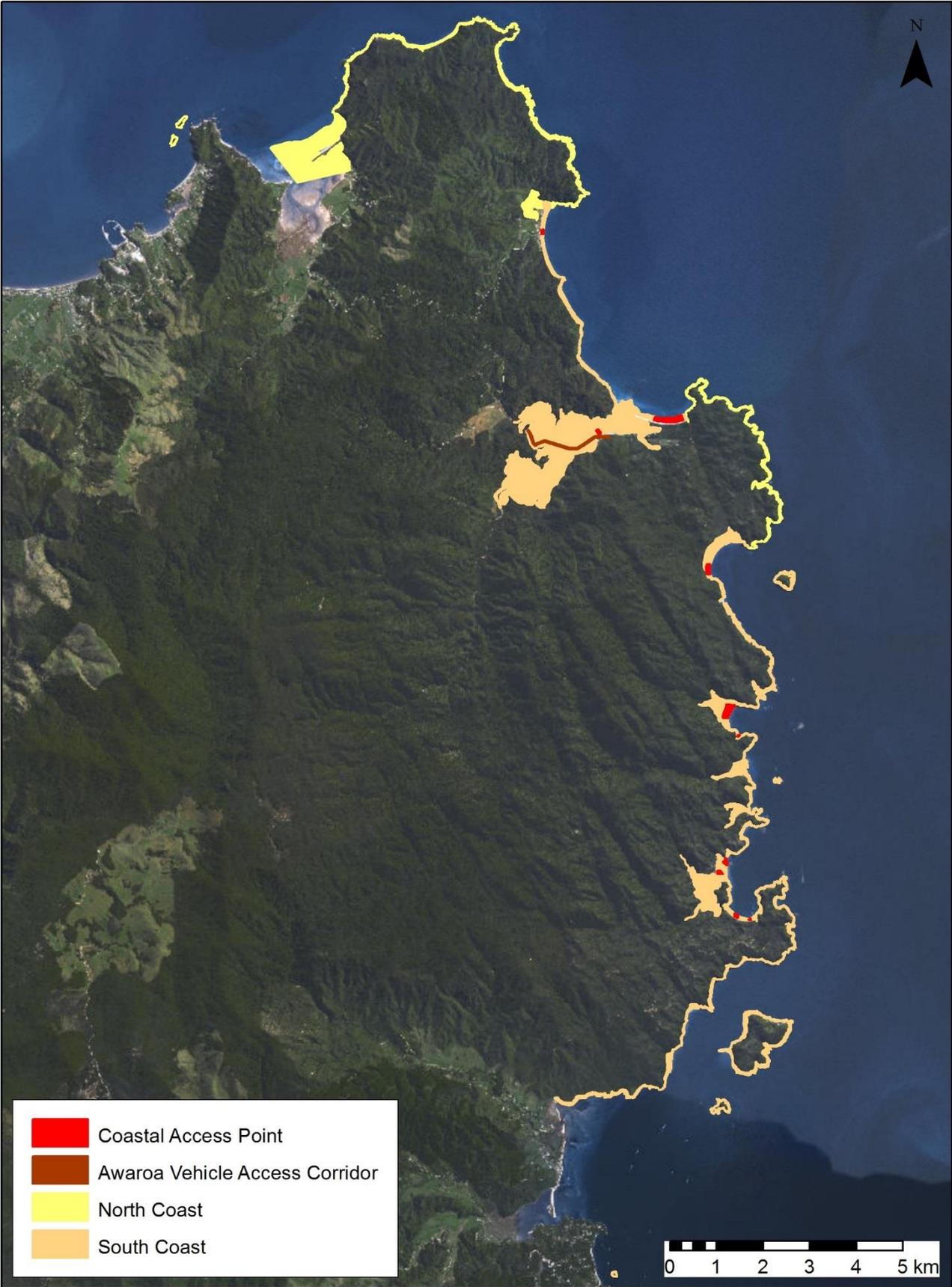
- (i) Coastal Access Points
- (ii) Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor
- (iii) South Coast
- (iv) North Coast.

These Recreational Zones are for visitor management purposes and overlay the two places (Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land and Foreshore Adjacent to National Park). They provide for a range of visitor experiences and means of access along the length of the reserve, within the two places, while protecting the reserve's values and achieving the outcomes identified in this plan for the two places.

The Recreational Zones are based on access, facilities, activities, characteristics and the visitor experiences sought, combined with user types, group sizes and current and expected patterns of use. They are described below, with further detail in the place sections (section 11.5.2 'Recreational Zones' for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land and section 12.5.3 'Recreational Zones' for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park).

### Map 2: Recreational Zones

(Refer to Maps 2A - 2F, pages 48 - 53 for more detail on the Coastal Access Points and the designated landing area for water taxis at Tonga Quarry, and Map 2G, page 57 for more detail on the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor.)



Concessions need to be managed in a way that is consistent with the characteristics of the Recreational Zones, and the outcomes sought for the two places. The maximum levels of recreation concession activity set out in this plan are intended to protect reserve values and visitor experiences, particularly naturalness (see section 8.2 'Recreation concessions').

However, it should be noted that, given the current legislative directive to allow the public to have freedom of entry and access to the reserve, there are constraints to what the Administration Committee can do to control visitor numbers in the reserve. There is the possibility that visitor numbers may continue to increase, eroding the very values of the reserve that the visitors are there to experience. In this regard the Administration Committee proposes to work with Tasman District Council to manage the use of vessels within the coastal marine area to ensure that the values of the reserve are protected and preserved in perpetuity. For example, while the commercial use of vessels is controlled for navigation and safety reasons, there are no limits on the noise levels that can be emitted by both commercial and recreational vessels.

If it becomes necessary to restrict the public's use of parts of the reserve this can be done, in accordance with the following sections of the Reserves Act 1977:

- (i) Section 19(2)(b) – public entry and access can be subject to such conditions and restrictions that are considered necessary for the protection and wellbeing of the reserve and for the protection and control of the public using it
- (ii) Section 55(1)(b) – the public can be prohibited from entering or encroaching on any part of the reserve being improved or allowed to regenerate
- (iii) Section 55(1)(f) – the Administration Committee can do whatever is desirable or necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration, and control of the reserve
- (iv) Section 106(1)(c), (d) and (e) – bylaws can be made to give effect to the above restrictions and controls.

The above restrictions on public access could occur by way of:

- (a) Amendments to this management plan, which may or may not involve public consultation, depending on whether the amendment materially affects the objectives or policies in this plan or the public interest in the area concerned
- (b) Additions or amendments to the bylaws, which may involve public consultation
- (c) An official notice from the Administration Committee, which may involve public consultation.

### **6.1.3.1 Coastal Access Points**

The Coastal Access Points are designated landing areas at Anchorage, Torrent Bay/ Rakauroa, Medlands Bay, Bark Bay/Wairima, Onetahuti, Awaroa Beach, Sawpit Point and Totaranui (see Maps 2A, 2B, 2C, 2D, 2E, & 2F, pages 50 - 55), for use by commercial vessels to pick up and/or drop off people, their luggage and/or equipment (which may include non-motorised watercraft at some sites). These people may be owners of adjacent private land and their guests, mana whenua carrying out kaitiaki responsibilities and/or non-commercial cultural activities, visitors to the nearby national park, kayakers, or they may just wish to enjoy the foreshore reserve near that point. Based on information gathered to date, the majority of people are day visitors, usually going into the adjacent national park for a short walk. Some will be independent visitors, others will be staying in overnight accommodation on private land, and some will be part of a commercially guided group (see section 8.2

'Recreation concessions'), who may also undertake training and briefings on the reserve.

Most of the Coastal Access Points are at beaches where infrastructure on the adjacent national park land is suitable for the large number of people that cross the reserve at these sites, except Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and Awaroa Beach, which are adjacent to private land. However, in some locations there are physical limits, such as water supply, sewage disposal areas and power supply, that constrain how much infrastructure can be provided on the adjacent land. Total visitor numbers at each site are therefore managed to a maximum level (see general characteristics below).

The use of Coastal Access Points by commercial operators should also be subject to specific conditions, such as maximum limits on activity. These criteria are set out in section 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions' (for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land) and section 12.7.1 'Recreation concessions' (for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park).

The reasons for requiring that most commercial vessel activities occur at these Coastal Access Points are to ensure that:

- (i) the potential adverse effects, such as noise and groups of congregating people, are confined to known locations; and
- (ii) larger concentrations of visitors are able to be managed within the physical constraints of the sites.

Visitors will be concentrated at the Coastal Access Points, mainly in the early morning and late afternoon (except Torrent Bay/Rakauroa). Outside of these times visitors to the reserve should be able to experience a less busy beach environment, apart from during the height of the summer season (late December to early February).

Other general characteristics of the Coastal Access Points are:

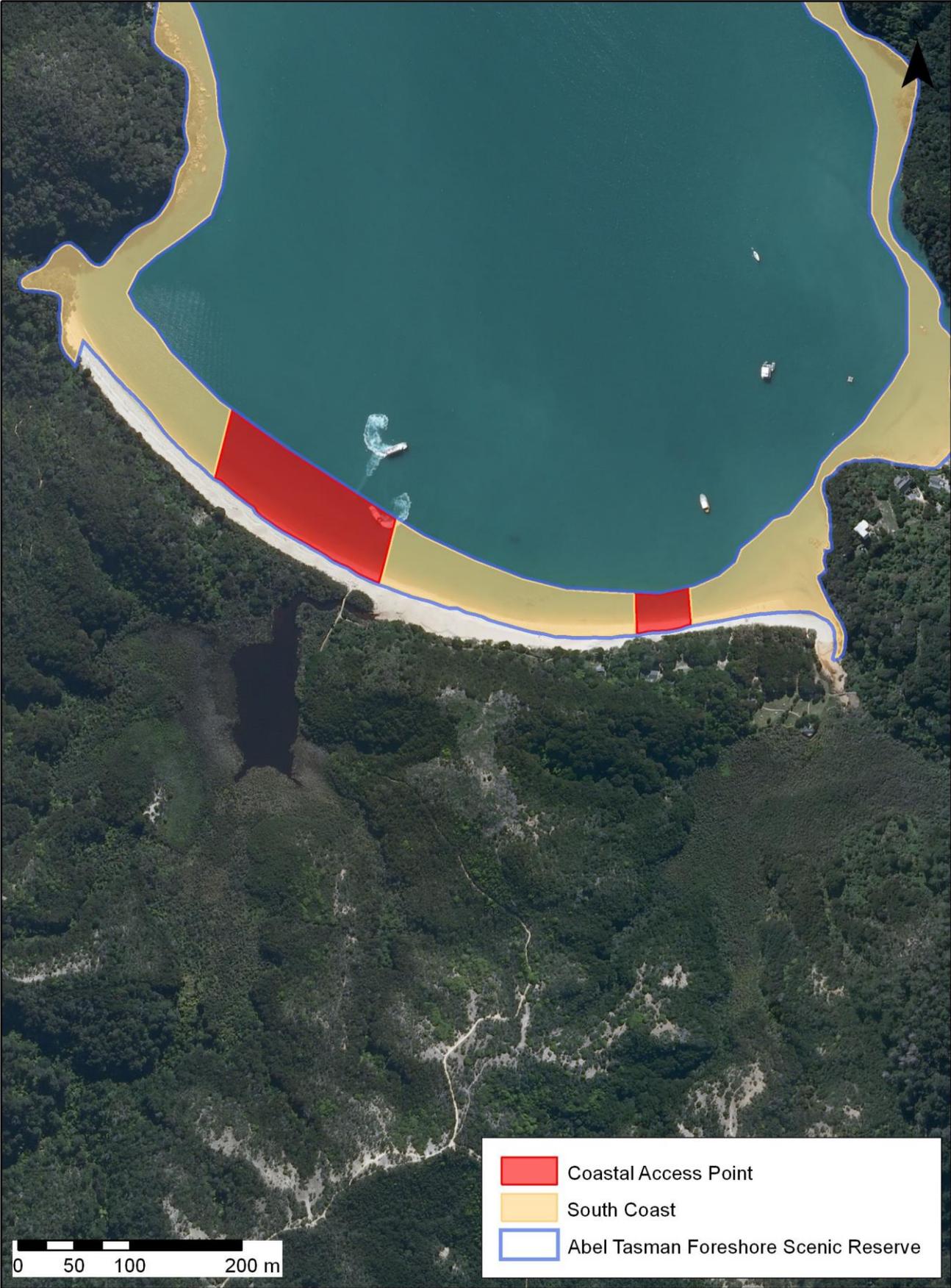
- (i) Private vessels anchored in, or hauled up onto, the reserve
- (ii) Commercial vessels coming and going
- (iii) Some noise from adjacent coastal waters (under the control of Tasman District Council), due to commercial and private vessels, from generators on the adjacent land, from aircraft overflight, and from commercial operators using communication devices for operational or safety purposes
- (iv) Frequent visitor interactions with others during the summer season (1 November to 30 April)
- (v) Commercially guided walking or water-based groups of up to 16 clients with 1 or 2 guides
- (vi) Large groups of up to 40 people being dropped off to undertake a group activity on the foreshore at that location
- (vii) Visitor numbers managed to a maximum of: 700 per day at Anchorage, Medlands Bay and Bark Bay/Wairima (combined), Onetahuti and Tonga Quarry<sup>6</sup> (combined), and Awaroa Beach and Sawpit Point (combined); 1200 per day at Totaranui; and 500 per day at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa
- (viii) Visitors may occasionally encounter mana whenua groups carrying out kaitiaki responsibilities and/or non-commercial cultural activities.

More specific details about each of the Coastal Access Points are set out in section 11.5.2.1 'Coastal Access Points' (for the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land) and section 12.5.3.1 'Coastal Access Points' (for the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park)

---

<sup>6</sup> See sections 6.1.3.3 and 12.7.1 Table 6, South Coast and Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor, water taxi activity - for use of Tonga Quarry. See section 6.1, Methods 2A-2E for details on implementation of the trial.

Map 2A: Anchorage Coastal Access Points



Map 2B: Torrent Bay/Rakauroa Coastal Access Points



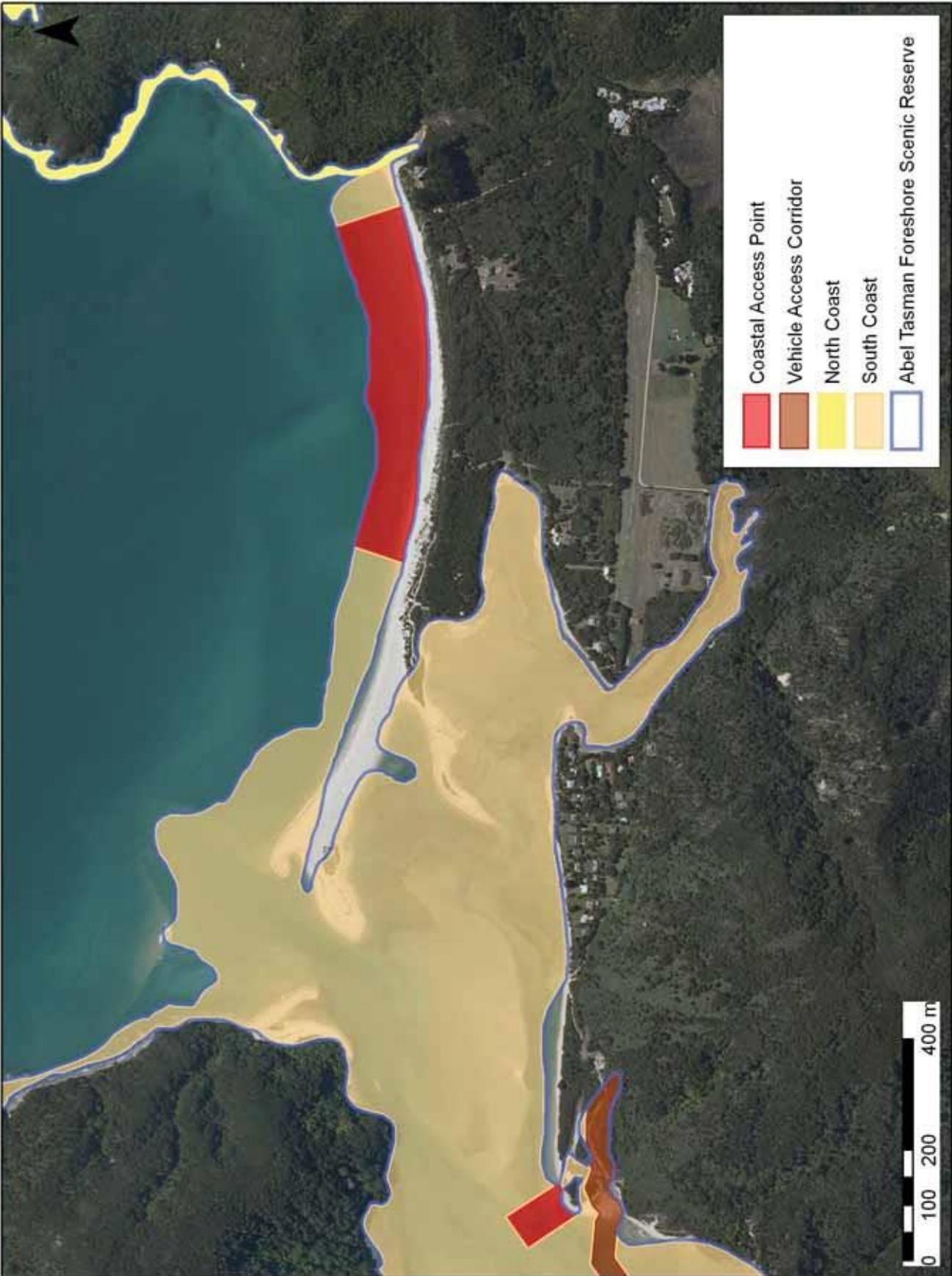
Map 2C: Medlands Bay and Bark Bay/Wairima Coastal Access Points



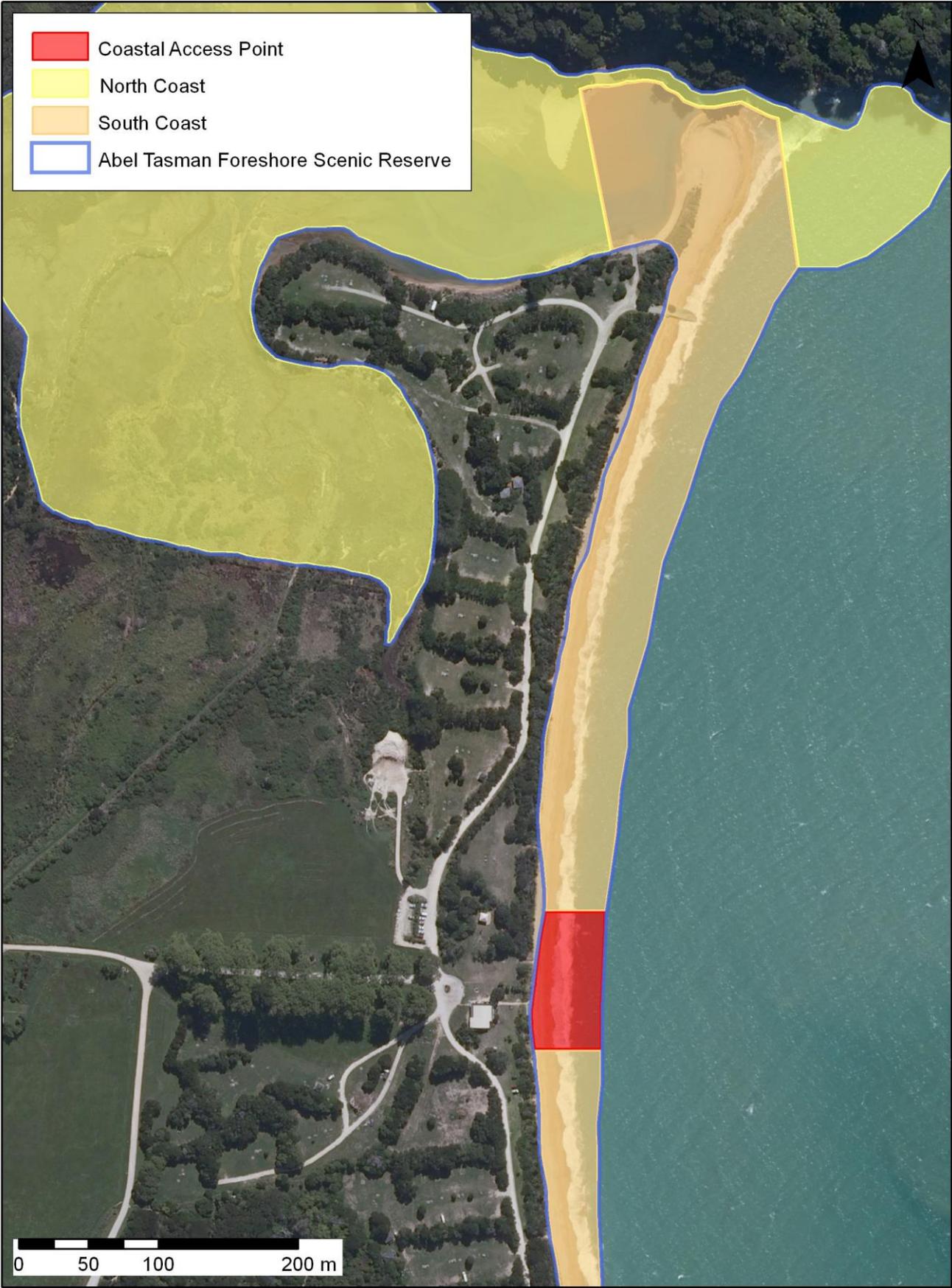
Map 2D: Onetahuti Coastal Access Point and the designated landing area for water taxis at Tonga Quarry



Map 2E: Awaroa Beach and Sawpit Point Coastal Access Points



Map 2F: Totaranui Coastal Access Point



### 6.1.3.2 *Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor*

(see also sections 6.3.1 'Land vehicles' and 6.4.2 'Dogs')

The Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor (see Map 2G, page 57) provides for vehicles (and dogs on a leash) to be taken across the Awaroa Inlet, from the Awaroa Road end carpark to the Awaroa settlement (via Sawpit Point), within the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park (where vehicles and dogs are generally not permitted). From the eastern end of the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor, within the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land, vehicles and dogs are generally permitted.

Generally light, low tyre-pressure, all-terrain vehicles (e.g. quad bikes) are used to transport goods, people and luggage across the inlet at low tide. The Administration Committee proposes to allow for the continued use of this long standing vehicle access, but with controls in place to ensure that any damage to the natural, historical and cultural values of the reserve are avoided or minimised. Any vehicle crossing the Awaroa Inlet should:

- (a) Stay within the designated boundaries of the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor (with an exception for safety reasons); and
- (b) Be limited to a gross laden weight of less than 3,500 kg.

A sign is required at the Awaroa Road end carpark showing the extent of the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor, stating the above weight requirement, and requiring all dogs to be on a leash.

Other general characteristics of this zone are:

- (i) Private vessels anchored in, or hauled up onto, the reserve (particularly near the Awaroa Road end carpark)
- (ii) Open access to all visitors but with controls on the use of commercial vessels
- (iii) Visitors may occasionally encounter mana whenua groups carrying out kaitiaki responsibilities and/or non-commercial cultural activities
- (iv) Commercially guided walking and water-based groups, with up to 16 clients and 1 or 2 guides, visiting for short periods of time, but no training or active team sports by these groups
- (v) No commercially guided walking or water-based groups, such as kayakers, being dropped off or picked up
- (vi) Up to 20 vehicles a day crossing the inlet at low tide
- (vii) Noise and visible tracks on the bed of the estuary from the all-terrain vehicles using the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor
- (viii) Dogs in vehicles or being taken across on a leash.

Map 2G: Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor



### 6.1.3.3 *South Coast*

The South Coast covers the reserve, from Totaranui south to Marahau, including the islands along this part of the coastline (Tonga, Pinnacle, Adele/ Motuarero-nui, Fisherman/Motuarero-iti and Ngaio); but excludes the Coastal Access Points, the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor, and the Abel Head promontory (Reef Point to Awaroa) (see Map 2, page 47; and Maps 2E & 2F, pages 52 & 53 for the boundary between the North Coast and the South Coast at Totaranui and Awaroa). The South Coast provides visitors with a quieter, more natural experience than the Coastal Access Points and the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor, but with the expectation of still encountering other visitors. Commercial vessel operations are strictly controlled, with water taxis using Tonga Quarry on a trial basis<sup>7</sup>. Commercially guided walking or water-based groups may visit these areas, as can mana whenua carrying out kaitiaki responsibilities and/or non-commercial cultural activities and private individuals who walk in or come in from the sea on private vessels.

Other general characteristics of the South Coast are:

- (i) Private vessels anchored in, or hauled up onto, the reserve
- (ii) Private aircraft landing on, or taking off from, the reserve adjacent to private land
- (iii) Open access for visitors to the mainland with some controls on access to the islands
- (iv) Visitors may occasionally encounter mana whenua groups carrying out kaitiaki responsibilities and/or non-commercial cultural activities
- (v) Commercial vessels in some locations, subject to controls
- (vi) Commercially guided walking and water-based groups, with up to 16 clients and 1 or 2 guides, visiting for short periods of time, but no training or active team sports by these groups (with the exception of Observation Beach bays)
- (vii) No commercially guided walking or water-based groups, such as kayakers, being dropped off or picked up (with the exception of Observation Beach bays, Stilwell Bay and Coquille Bay)
- (viii) No hire equipment being dropped off or retrieved, except at Torrent Bay or Awaroa settlements by an authorised landowner
- (ix) Visitor numbers managed to a maximum of 700 per day at Onetahuti and Tonga Quarry (combined), 500 per site (excluding Tonga Quarry) per day on the mainland, and 200 per site per day on the accessible islands
- (x) Regular visitor interactions with others during the height of the summer season (early December to mid-February)
- (xi) Some noise from vessels on the water, particularly water skiers at Stilwell Bay and Adele Island/Motuarero-nui, and the occasional commercial vessel accessing the reserve. Noise from aircraft landings/take-offs, where the reserve adjoins private land, as well as over-flights. Some noise from the adjacent private land, including generators. Occasional noise from communication devices used for operational or safety purposes.

### 6.1.3.4 *North Coast*

The North Coast covers the reserve from Totaranui north to Wainui Bay, and includes the Tata Islands and the Abel Head promontory (from Reef Point to Awaroa) (see Map 2, page 47; and Maps 2E & 2F, pages 52 & 53, for the boundary between the North

---

<sup>7</sup> See section 12.7.1 Table 6, South Coast and Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor, water taxi activity - for use of Tonga Quarry. See section 6.1, Methods 2A-2E for details on implementation of the trial.

Coast and the South Coast at Totaranui and Awaroa). This part of the reserve is managed as a more remote and natural experience than the other Recreational Zones, where visitors can experience peace and solitude with minimal human intrusion. This is primarily due to the exclusion of any water-based commercial activities. Groups of commercially guided walkers, from the national park, may enter the reserve, but otherwise all other visitors will have reached the North Coast by their own means. This could be by private vessel, bareboat charter, freedom hire kayak, by walking in, or by independently landing on the reserve from a charter boat.

Other general characteristics of this zone are:

- (i) Private vessels anchored in, or hauled up onto, the reserve
- (ii) No direct water-based commercial activity
- (iii) Very limited noise from motorised private vessels on the water and visiting the reserve. No noise from generators or other devices
- (iv) Visitor numbers managed to a maximum of 200 per site per day
- (v) Fewer visitor interactions with others than in the South Coast
- (vi) Commercially guided walking groups of up to 8 clients and 1 guide could be encountered, as well as occasional larger school groups on trips from Totaranui
- (vii) Visitors may occasionally encounter mana whenua groups carrying out kaitiaki responsibilities and/or non-commercial cultural activities.

#### **6.1.4 Monitoring**

The experiences of visitors and their satisfaction, as well as the effects of visitor use, should be monitored in each Recreational Zone. This is required to ensure that the provisions of this plan that apply to visitor access and use are successfully retaining the desired characteristics of the Recreational Zones and achieving the desired outcomes at places, for people's benefit and enjoyment.

This information will contribute to any future review of the visitor and concession management provisions in this plan (see section 8.2 'Recreation concessions').

#### **6.1.5 Noise**

Natural quiet is an important part of the reserve experience and needs to be protected and preserved. There are bylaws that prohibit the use of generators and public address systems in the adjacent national park. Similar bylaws also apply in the reserve. Also, the permission of the Administration Committee is required to produce or cause any excessive noise that unreasonably disturbs or annoys any other person or indigenous fauna in the reserve. An exception is made for communication devices used for operational or safety purposes. The Administration Committee intends to retain these bylaws.

Noise from activities on adjacent coastal waters, adjacent private land and aircraft over-flight can also impact on reserve values and controls should be advocated for (see section 6.1.10 'Advocacy').

Noise from the use of private and commercial vehicles, vessels and aircraft on the reserve also needs to be managed (see sections 6.3 'The use of vehicles and other forms of transport' and 8.2.15 'Noise').

#### **6.1.6 Camping and overnight stays in vessels**

The reserve provides few practical sites for camping, as it is covered by tidal waters twice daily. However, people occasionally camp (with or without tents) within the

national park at the edge of the reserve at or about the Mean High Water Mark. Camping sites are provided in the adjacent national park, and the numbers of campers are regulated through a booking system and bylaws. Informal camping on the foreshore can create waste disposal problems, disturb flora and fauna, and alter the experience of other users.

People also stay overnight in vessels anchored to the foreshore within the reserve. Except for visual and navigation safety issues, overnight stays in vessels have little effect on the reserve, provided the vessels have full waste containment or on-shore facilities can be used.

Bylaws prohibit camping in the reserve, except for overnight stays on vessels, and prohibit the discharge of any human waste (or similar substance) in the reserve. The Administration Committee intends to retain these bylaws and proposes new bylaws that would manage where and how people can stay in the reserve on a vessel, as follows:

- (a) Any vessel that does not have on-board toilets must be within 500 metres of on-shore facilities; otherwise
- (b) The vessel needs to be fully self-sufficient and self-contained.

### **6.1.7 Educational and other large groups**

School groups and other large groups, such as for iwi gatherings or family celebrations, often use visitor facilities in the adjacent national park and make use of the reserve for group activities. These 'not-for-profit' groups do not require a concession, provided there is no commercial component to their activities, such as the provision of equipment or food brought into the reserve by a commercial operator (see section 8.2 'Recreation concessions').

Management of large groups within the reserve is required to ensure that the values of the reserve and the experiences of other visitors are not adversely affected. This plan identifies that large groups (up to 40) should generally be confined to the Coastal Access Points. However, existing local community events can continue (see section 11.5.6 'Educational and other large groups').

### **6.1.8 Human waste and litter**

People toileting on the foreshore reserve can be a significant issue, particularly in areas where toilet facilities are not provided in the adjacent national park (such as on the islands) or on Tasman District Council managed reserves. There have also been problems associated with large numbers of visitors waiting to be picked up from Torrent Bay/Rakauroa, where the nearest toilets are not directly adjacent to the Coastal Access Point and fouling has occurred on private land.

The provision of toilet facilities by the Department of Conservation within the national park is in accordance with current visitor asset planning and the management plan for the park.

Given the above, the Administration Committee intends to ensure that visitors are well informed regarding the location of toilets adjacent to the reserve, the requirement to use the toilets (where they are provided - in accordance with the bylaws for the Abel Tasman National Park) and provide education material regarding the Environmental Care Code. Where there are no toilets visitors should be encouraged to use the closest facilities rather than 'freedom toileting', to prevent on-going issues with fouling.

Commercial vessels should be required to provide on-board or portable toilets (see section 8.2 'Recreation concessions'), and private vessels with on-board toilets that

anchor in the reserve should have waste holding tanks that avoid the discharge of any human waste within the reserve.

There are no facilities for the disposal of rubbish in the reserve or on adjacent lands, and rubbish cannot be buried in the reserve. This means that visitors must take all their rubbish with them when they leave the reserve and dispose of it appropriately.

Bylaws prohibit the discharge of any human waste or other polluting substances in the reserve, and the leaving or burying of any litter in the reserve. The Administration Committee intends to retain these bylaws.

### 6.1.9 Information including interpretation

Interpretation and information about the reserve can be found in various forms (such as signs, pamphlets, and the Department of Conservation's website) and locations (such as on the adjacent national park or at local visitor information centres), but not on the reserve itself. This is because of the tidal nature of the reserve and the need to minimise any unnecessary structures. Any signs on national park land regarding the reserve will need to comply with the management plan provisions for the park. The information provided should also be integrated with that for the park, including: the Environmental Care Code and toileting requirements, visitor safety, Māori and European history, coastal ecology, and the Tonga Island Marine Reserve; as well as highlighting the unique nature of this reserve and its relationship with private land, public lands and the coastal waters.

The Administration Committee intends to keep information about the reserve up to date and relevant for visitor safety and enjoyment, including information about the types of experiences visitors can expect at different times and locations in the reserve.

### 6.1.10 Advocacy

Whilst this plan can only directly manage activities within the reserve, the experience of visitors to the reserve is closely linked to activities occurring on the adjacent national park, private lands and coastal waters. Integrated conservation management of the reserve, the park, the private lands and the coastal waters is vital to ensure the reserve values and visitor experiences are protected and preserved (in accordance with Conservation General Policy 13(c), see Appendix 9).

Advocacy should be undertaken with the appropriate stakeholders and authorities to ensure that controls on activities are consistent with the characteristics of the Recreational Zones and the outcomes sought in this plan (see section 9.1 'Public participation in management of the reserve').

#### 6.1 Policies

1. To reconcile the conflicting demands of preserving reserve values while allowing visitors to enjoy those values, by managing the pattern and frequency of visitor use and activities in the reserve in a way that meets the Primary Objectives for the reserve, and the objectives and outcomes for the places in the reserve.
2. To provide a range of appropriate visitor experiences in the reserve, through the implementation and management of Recreational Zones.
3. To monitor visitor experiences with reference to the Recreational Zones and the outcomes sought for the places in the reserve.
4. To provide information to visitors to improve their experiences in the reserve and their understanding of the reserve's values.

## 6.1 Methods

1. *Public access to parts of the reserve may be permanently or temporarily closed (while maintaining access for adjoining private landowners), to protect the natural values of the reserve or to protect and control the public.*
2. *Protect and preserve the intrinsic values of the reserve by managing visitor numbers and use of the reserve in accordance with the following criteria identified for each of the Recreational Zones:*
  - (a) *Coastal Access Points –*
    - (i) *Large groups of up to 40 people may be dropped off to undertake a group activity on the reserve within this zone;*
    - (ii) *Visitor numbers managed to a maximum of: 700 per day at Anchorage, Bark Bay/Wairima and Medlands Bay (combined), Tonga Quarry<sup>8</sup> and Onetahuti (combined), and Awaroa Beach and Sawpit Point (combined); 1200 per day at Totaranui; and 500 per day at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa.*
  - (b) *Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor – up to 20 vehicle movements per day.*
  - (c) *South Coast – maximum of 700 visitors at Tonga Quarry and Onetahuti (combined), 500 visitors per site per day on the mainland, and 200 visitors per site per day on the accessible islands.*
  - (d) *North Coast – maximum of 200 visitors per site per day.*
- 2A. *Provide for water taxi access at Tonga Quarry (as identified on Map 2D, page 53) as a trial, in accordance with Methods 2B to 2E.*
- 2B. *Assess the trial use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis when this plan is reviewed in full, in accordance with Section 10 Method 6, to determine whether to:*
  - (a) *continue the trial;*
  - (b) *discontinue the trial and confirm the use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis;*
  - (c) *discontinue the trial and revoke the use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis; or*
  - (d) *endorse any decision to discontinue the trial made under 2D.*
- 2C. *Establish and implement a monitoring programme for the use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis, to record and report on the effects on indigenous species, visitor experiences, physical effects on the site and utilisation of the site by concessionaires and others.*
- 2D. *If monitoring shows that the effects of use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis on reserve values or people's experiences are significant and/or unacceptable, then:*
  - (a) *further restrictions may be placed on the use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis in order to manage these adverse effects; or*
  - (b) *the use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis may be discontinued at any stage of the trial.*
- 2E. *Use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis may continue until such time as an assessment of the trial has been carried out in accordance with Method 2B.*
3. *Ask the Department of Conservation to erect a sign at the Awaroa Road end carpark to provide information about the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor and its use.*

---

<sup>8</sup> Tonga Quarry is not a Coastal Access Point, see section 6.1.3.3.

4. *Monitor visitor experiences, satisfaction and effects in each Recreational Zone to determine whether the Objectives and Outcomes of this plan are being met.*
5. *Retain the bylaws controlling noise and the discharge of human waste and litter in the reserve.*
6. *Amend the bylaw controlling camping in the reserve on a vessel to require:*
  - (a) *any vessel that does not have on-board toilets to be within 500m of onshore facilities; otherwise*
  - (b) *the vessel needs to be fully self-sufficient and self-contained.*
7. *Provide up-to-date information and interpretation to visitors about:*
  - (a) *the reserve. This should be integrated with information on the adjacent national park, and identify the types of experiences that visitors can expect at different times and locations in the reserve.*
  - (b) *the location of toilets on adjacent lands, the requirement to use the toilets (where provided) and the Environmental Care Code.*
8. *Work with relevant stakeholders and authorities to seek to control activities outside the reserve that:*
  - (a) *are inconsistent with the characteristics of the Recreational Zones*
  - (b) *adversely affect the values of the reserve and visitor experiences, such as noise from activities on adjacent coastal waters, adjacent private land and aircraft over-flight.*

## 6.2 Sports fishing and game bird hunting

There are no sports fish found within the reserve, but occasionally game birds may be found on the reserve. Conservation General Policy 9.4(b) (which requires that populations of indigenous species are not adversely affected, see Appendix 9) recognises that the hunting of game birds could be provided for. However, this activity could result in issues relating to visitor safety, as well as potential adverse effects on indigenous fauna, which would be inconsistent with section 19(1)(a) and (2) of the Reserves Act 1977. Therefore, the Administration Committee proposes a new bylaw which would prohibit recreational game bird hunting on the reserve.

If game bird numbers increase to a level where they need to be controlled, then there should be liaison with the Nelson/Marlborough Fish and Game Council to carry out a cull for reserve management purposes.

### 6.2 Policy

1. To prohibit recreational game bird hunting in the reserve.

### 6.2 Methods

1. *Seek a new bylaw which would prohibit the recreational hunting of game birds in the reserve.*
2. *Liaise with the Nelson/Marlborough Fish and Game Council regarding any culls of game birds in the reserve.*

## 6.3 The use of vehicles and other forms of transport

Conservation General Policy 9.5(a) (see Appendix 9) provides for the use of vehicles and any other forms of transport in the reserve, where such use is compatible with the statutory purposes for which the place is held. In this plan vehicles that travel on land are considered separately to vehicles that travel on water (i.e. vessels) and aircraft.

### 6.3.1 Land vehicles

Bylaws allow the use of a land vehicle in the reserve unless it is likely to cause a nuisance, disturbance, danger or damage to any person, indigenous flora or fauna, or natural landforms. The bylaws define 'vehicle' in accordance with the Reserves Act 1977<sup>9</sup>, which includes a seaplane with wheels while it is on the surface of the land, but not a hovercraft. For the purposes of this management plan, a land vehicle includes a hovercraft and a seaplane (whether on floats or wheels) while it is on the surface of the land (see the Glossary).

Most of the reserve is unsuitable for land vehicles, including mountain bikes, as it is comprised of soft sand/mud or rocky inter-tidal substrates. Land vehicle use can cause unreasonable noise, damage estuarine areas, disturb wildlife and affect the experience of other visitors. Bylaws for the adjacent national park prohibit the use of (land) vehicles in the national park, where it adjoins the reserve, except on formed roads, formed carparks, or at Totaranui. Vehicles are permitted on public roads and private land adjacent to the reserve. Generally, land vehicle use on the reserve is limited to all-terrain vehicles and tractors, which cross the Awaroa Inlet, tow vessels, or move equipment across the reserve to and from adjacent private land; and vehicles using the boat ramps at Totaranui.

This plan identifies where the use of land vehicles may or may not occur, subject to restrictions and conditions for their use in the two places (see sections 6.1.3.2 'Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor', 11.5.3 'Land vehicles' for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land and 12.5.4 'Land vehicles' for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park). The Administration Committee proposes amendments to the bylaws which would give effect to these changes.

### 6.3.2 Vessels

Motorised vessels and non-motorised watercraft (see Glossary definitions) provide the most popular form of access to the reserve. Commercial vessels transport thousands of visitors to and from the reserve. Many other visitors gain access to the reserve by commercially guided or freedom rental kayaks, bareboat charters, and private vessels. Owners of, and visitors to, private land adjacent to the reserve also make use of commercial vessels to gain access and transport supplies to their properties. In addition to the more common private vessel types (such as sailboats and small boats with outboard motors) there is the possibility that personal watercraft (e.g. jet skis), seaplanes (which are considered a vessel when on the surface of the water), hovercraft, amphibious vehicles and other novel vessels (such as hydrofoils, semi-submersibles, airboats and motorised kayaks) may also be used to access the reserve.

The main effects of vessel use are noise, disturbance to birds, the creation of crowding at landing points, and the visual and navigational effects of vessels anchored to and/or hauled up on the reserve.

Bylaws allow the use of a vessel in the reserve unless it is likely to cause a nuisance, disturbance, danger or damage to any person, indigenous flora or fauna, or natural

---

<sup>9</sup> 'A contrivance equipped with wheels or revolving runners upon which it moves or is moved, and includes a contrivance from which the road wheels or revolving runners have been removed.'

landforms. There are also controls regarding the obstruction of access ways and how long a vessel can remain anchored in the reserve. Rule 25.4.2 in the Tasman Resource Management Plan permits the use of any craft for navigation purposes, provided it complies with several conditions, including:

- (i) The activity does not damage or destroy coastal marine habitat or species within the estuarine or intertidal areas identified in Schedule 25.1F (see Appendix 6).
- (ii) The activity does not disturb coastal marine species in a manner that prevents animals or plants from occupying their usual habitat within the estuarine or intertidal areas identified in Schedule 25.1F (see Appendix 6).

This plan identifies where the use of different types of vessels may be restricted and sets conditions for their use in the two places (see sections 11.5.4 'Vessels' for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land and 12.5.5 'Vessels' for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park). The Administration Committee proposes amendments to the bylaws which would give effect to these changes.

Commercial vessel use on the reserve is controlled through concessions (see section 8.2 'Recreation concessions').

### 6.3.3 Aircraft

Any private or commercial aircraft landing<sup>10</sup> on, or taking off from, the reserve requires a concession (see sections 8.2.14 'Aircraft' and 8.3.3 'Aircraft').

Aircraft landings/take-offs in the adjoining national park are restricted to essential management purposes or emergencies, but aircraft can land/take-off in adjacent areas of private land, including a private airstrip at Awaroa (outside the reserve). Aircraft landings/take-offs in the coastal marine area are controlled by the Tasman Resource Management Plan; a resource consent is required for an aircraft landing or take-off within 500 metres seaward of the Mean High Water Springs along the Abel Tasman coast (between Abel Tasman Point and the Marahau River).

#### 6.3 Policy

1. To prevent adverse effects on reserve values by managing the use of vehicles and other forms of transport.

#### 6.3 Method

1. *Provide for some use of vehicles and other forms of transport on the reserve, subject to bylaws and other criteria in accordance with the Recreational Zones in the two places.*

## 6.4 Animals

Under section 94(1) of the Reserves Act 1977 it is an offence to allow any animal to be on the reserve unless authorised. Conservation General Policy 9.6(a) (see Appendix 9) does not permit animals (including pets) to be taken onto the reserve unless this is consistent with legislation and specifically provided for in this management plan.

---

<sup>10</sup> In accordance with section 17ZF(5) of the Conservation Act 1987 landing includes the hovering of any aircraft and the setting down or taking on of goods or persons from an aircraft.

### 6.4.1 Horses

Horses are sometimes taken onto the foreshore, such as those areas adjacent to the road-ends at Marahau and Wainui. Horses can adversely affect sensitive sites, spread weed seeds, foul areas with droppings, disturb indigenous birds and other animals, destroy indigenous flora and inconvenience visitors. Given the potential adverse effects of horses on the reserve, the use of horses is considered inappropriate and authorisations should not be granted to take a horse into the reserve.

### 6.4.2 Dogs

Dogs are not usually permitted within scenic reserves as they can adversely affect sensitive sites, kill or disturb indigenous animals (especially birds), foul areas with droppings, and inconvenience visitors. Dogs are not allowed in the adjacent national park, unless they are guide dogs or police dogs, or an authorisation has been granted (e.g. for hunting purposes).

Historically, dogs have been taken onto the foreshore, especially on those areas adjacent to private land, and the road-ends at Marahau and Wainui. Dogs can also be found in other parts of the reserve from visiting vessels. Bylaws (in force when this plan was approved) allow dogs in all parts of the reserve, provided they are under control.

Tasman District Council also has a responsibility to control dogs within the district, which includes the reserve, in accordance with the Dog Control Act 1996. The Council has prepared a Dog Control Bylaw under this act and the following provisions apply:

- (i) Dogs are prohibited from that part of the reserve around Tonga, Adele/ Motuarero-nui and Fisherman/Motuarero-iti islands.
- (ii) In all other parts of the reserve a dog can be off a leash but it must be kept on a leash if it is likely to injure, endanger, or cause distress to any protected wildlife.

Given the potential adverse effects of dogs on the values of the reserve and visitor experiences, the Administration Committee proposes amendments to the bylaws which would further restrict where dogs are allowed in the reserve. Essentially, this is to prohibit dogs on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park (see section 12.5.6 'Dogs') and allow dogs on the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land (see sections 11.5.5 'Dogs'). Note that certain dogs will still be allowed on the reserve: those that don't require an authorisation (police, Department of Conservation, customs, search and rescue, guide, and companion dogs); and those that do require an authorisation (hunting dogs).

### 6.4.3 Other domestic animals

Other domestic animals such as cats and other pets may occasionally enter the reserve from adjacent private land. Many of these animals have the potential to cause serious harm to indigenous flora and fauna, and should not be allowed on the reserve. The Administration Committee intends to advocate to the private land owners that they do not keep domestic animals (other than dogs) on their property.

#### 6.4 Policy

1. To prevent adverse effects on reserve values by managing the taking of animals onto the reserve.

#### **6.4 Methods**

1. *Authorisations should not be granted to take horses or other animals (other than dogs) into the reserve.*
2. *Provide for dogs to be allowed on some parts of the reserve without an authorisation, subject to bylaws and other criteria set out for the two places.*
3. *Work with adjacent private landowners to prevent the keeping of any domestic animals, other than dogs, on their property.*

## 7. Accommodation and related facilities

---

### 7.1 Accommodation

Accommodation facilities within the reserve are not provided by the Administration Committee owing to the dynamic nature of the foreshore. Other than commercial vessels, the provision of commercial accommodation in the reserve is impractical and inappropriate. No concessions should be issued for commercial accommodation in the reserve, except for some commercial vessels (see section 8.2 'Recreation concessions'). Personal accommodation in the reserve requires authorisation under section 44 of the Reserves Act 1977. This is provided for by bylaws, which allow people to stay overnight in the reserve, subject to conditions (see sections 6.1.6 'Camping and overnight stays in vessels'). Any other form of private accommodation should not be allowed, in accordance with Conservation General Policy 10(g) (see Appendix 9).

<b>7.1 Policy</b>
1. To prevent the development of permanent accommodation in the reserve.
<b>7.1 Methods</b>
1. <i>Public accommodation should not be provided.</i>
2. <i>Concessions or other authorisations for private accommodation should not be allowed, except as provided for in:</i>
(a) <i>Methods 8 and 10 (section 8.2, pages 86-87), for charter boat and servicing floating accommodation activity</i>
(b) <i>Method 6 (section 6.1, page 63), for private vessels as it is impractical, inappropriate and inconsistent with the values of the reserve.</i>






### 7.2 Other facilities and structures

Conservation General Policy 10(a) (see Appendix 9) provides for facilities in the reserve for public recreation, educational and community services subject to them being consistent with the outcomes for the two places. Most public facilities along the Abel Tasman coast are located outside the reserve, within the adjacent Abel Tasman National Park (administered by the Department of Conservation) and reserves administered by Tasman District Council.

Given the tidal nature of the foreshore, there are a limited number of facilities in the reserve. These are generally there to help provide access to the coastal marine area, such as access steps, boat ramps, jetties and moorings. There are two boat ramps at Totaranui, a jetty at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and several mooring posts and boat cradles in the estuary at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa. Pipes also cross the estuary at Bark Bay/Wairima for water supply and sewage removal purposes associated with the campsite. Other facilities, such as signs, toilets, and kayak storage racks are generally positioned on land adjacent to the reserve.

Facilities owned by people and organisations other than the Department of Conservation, will require a concession, and any new facilities should meet the requirements of Conservation General Policy 10(c) and 10(d) (see Appendix 9), and should not be for exclusive private use (Conservation General Policy 10(g), see Appendix 9). An example of facilities that would be consistent with these provisions is navigation markers.

This plan identifies where new structures (such as for beach protection) or facilities that require a concession may be allowed and sets conditions for their use (see section 11.6 'Facilities and structures' for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land and section 12.6 'Facilities and structures' for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park). In addition to maintaining the existing public facilities, the Administration Committee may wish to build new public facilities in the reserve. This should only occur where the facility is essential in providing for, or enhancing, public access to the reserve.

All facilities and structures, including replacements, additions and extensions also need to meet the criteria set out in Conservation General Policy 10(e) (see Appendix 9). This does not preclude the ability of the Administration Committee to charge a fee to use any facility provided in the reserve.

The Tasman Resource Management Plan also contains provisions regulating structures along the Abel Tasman coastline. The number, location, and scale of structures are limited to the following:

- (a) One public mooring at each of Tata Islands, Mutton Cove, and Taupo Point
- (b) Two boat ramps at Totaranui
- (c) A water pipe at Bark Bay/Wairima
- (d) A jetty for public use at Torrent Bay/Rakauora
- (e) Swing moorings in association with an interest in a land title at Boundary Bay, Torrent Bay/Rakauora, and Astrolabe Roadstead/Whenuakura/Te Karetu, and only to the extent that the cumulative effect of moorings at each location is not adverse
- (f) Swing moorings at The Anchorage limited to one for each private property at The Anchorage (as at 25 May 1996), plus one other existing mooring
- (g) Structures or moorings are not allowed adjacent to Adele/Motuarero-nui or Fisherman/Motuarero-iti islands.

### **7.2.1 Monitoring**

Monitoring of the effects of all the facilities and structures in the reserve on the natural resources and historical and cultural heritage, and on the benefit and enjoyment of the public, including public access, should be carried out. Concessions may include conditions requiring the holder to monitor the effects of any facility or structure they are accountable for. This monitoring will help inform the Administration Committee when making future management decisions regarding any proposed new facilities or structures in the reserve.

## **7.2 Policy**

1. To minimise the provision of visitor facilities and other structures within the reserve.

## **7.2 Methods**

1. *Any new facility or structure requiring a concession should not be for exclusive private use, and should be in accordance with Methods 1-3 (section 11.6, page 120) and Methods 1-2 (section 12.6, page 132).*
2. *Monitor the effects of facilities and structures on the values of the reserve.*

## 8. Activities requiring specific authorisation

---

### 8.1 Concessions - general

A concession is a lease, licence, permit, or easement granted under section 59A of the Reserves Act 1977 (in accordance with Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987) to carry out an activity on the reserve that often involves a commercial component or occupation of the reserve. These activities include, but are not limited to: transport services; commercial education or instruction services; commercial guiding; commercial attractions and services; commercial hunting; the drop off/retrieval of hire equipment associated with use of the reserve (e.g. non-motorised watercraft, camping equipment, gazebos or portable furniture for weddings or other functions); trading or operating a business; building or occupying a structure; easements; or occupation of land.

The Administration Committee can only manage concession activities that take place within the boundaries of the reserve, such as commercial vessels dropping off or picking up clients. Some activities may also require a concession from the Department of Conservation under the National Parks Act 1980 and the provisions of the Abel Tasman National Park management plan where they cross the Mean High Water Mark boundary into the national park. Activities below Mean Low Water Springs or on private land are managed by Tasman District Council.

In this plan, concessions have been divided into two types:

- (i) Recreation concessions - commercial activities that provide services to visitors, such as transportation and guiding (see section 8.2 'Recreation concessions')
- (ii) Non-recreation concessions - other activities that do not directly benefit visitors to the reserve, such as commercial filming and private water easements (see section 8.3 'Non-recreation concessions').

#### 8.1.1 Processing concession applications

Recreation concession activities need to provide visitor experiences that are consistent with the Recreational Zones (see sections 6.1.2 'Visitor experiences' and 6.1.3 'Recreational Zones'). Conditions should be placed on concessions to ensure this is achieved. Concessions can be granted for an activity over a set number of years, or for 'one-off' activities.

The Department of Conservation, with delegated authority from the Administration Committee, is responsible for receiving, processing and deciding on concession applications in accordance with the provisions of this management plan. The Department also issues and monitors any concessions granted.

#### 8.1.2 Concession management

Concession activities have the potential to cause adverse effects on natural, historical and cultural values, and visitor experiences. However, they may also provide a benefit to the reserve, and enable people to enjoy and use the reserve, thereby assisting in achieving the objectives and outcomes for the reserve.

Scenic reserve status reflects the high natural values of the Abel Tasman coast. The reserve has significant intrinsic natural, historical, cultural and recreational values. It is the Administration Committee's role to protect and preserve the scenic and natural values of the reserve in perpetuity for the benefit, enjoyment and use of the public. It is appropriate that the Administration Committee takes a precautionary approach, and

where little is known about the effects of an activity or use on the reserve then that activity or use should not be permitted. Where there is a conflict, the primary purpose of the Reserves Act 1977 prevails.

Carrying out a commercial operation in the reserve is a privilege and concessionaires have a responsibility to ensure that the values of the reserve are preserved as far as possible. Concessions are of limited duration and do not confer rights beyond those contained in the concession, nor an expectation that similar rights will be granted in the future.

### 8.1.3 Historic cultural values

Where a proposed concession is likely to affect Māori or early European cultural values, or where the interpretation proposed by a concessionaire includes Māori or early European history and/or values, tangata whenua or the descendants of the early European settlers should be consulted by the concessionaire. The views of tangata whenua and/or the descendants of the early European settlers will be considered by the Administration Committee.

### 8.1.4 Concession monitoring

Concessions should be monitored to assess the effects of the concession activities on natural resources, historical and cultural heritage, and the benefit and enjoyment of the public, including public access. This monitoring can then inform future management decisions (see section 8.2.18 'Monitoring').

#### 8.1 Policy

1. To provide for concession activities in the reserve, in a manner consistent with:
  - (a) the Reserves Act 1977, Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987, any other relevant Acts, and Conservation General Policy 2005;
  - (b) the Primary Objectives of this plan;
  - (c) the objectives and outcomes for the places in the reserve; and
  - (d) the protection and preservation of the reserve's intrinsic natural, historical, cultural and recreational values.

#### 8.1 Methods

1. *A concession activity should not be allowed where it:*
  - (a) *Is inconsistent with the Reserves Act 1977, Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987 or Conservation General Policy 2005;*
  - (b) *Is inconsistent with the Primary Objectives, policies or methods in this plan, and the objectives and outcomes for the places in the reserve;*
  - (c) *Threatens the protection and preservation of the reserve's intrinsic values;*
  - (d) *Is inconsistent with the characteristics for the Recreational Zones;*
  - (e) *Threatens to cause unacceptable adverse effects, including cumulative effects, on reserve values;*
  - (f) *Cannot use existing access; or*

- (g) *Threatens to adversely affect the benefit, use and enjoyment of the public, including public access and visitor experiences.*
- 2. *Conditions should be included in any approved concession to ensure that any actual or potential adverse environmental and/or social effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated.*
- 3. *Encourage concession applicants and existing concessionaires providing, or intending to provide, interpretation or information regarding Māori or early European sites, history or values, to consult with and obtain the support of tangata whenua or the descendants of the early European settlers for their interpretation information.*
- 4. *The views of tangata whenua, or the descendants of early European settlers, regarding concession applications that are likely to affect Māori or early European cultural values will be considered.*
- 5. *Monitor the effects of concession activities on the values of the reserve.*

## 8.2 Recreation concessions

### 8.2.1 Recreation concession management

Recreation concessionaires have an important role in contributing to the regional economy and providing visitors with transport options to the reserve and the national park, as well as for residents of, or visitors to, the privately-owned lands along the Abel Tasman coast. The concessionaires also offer visitors an enhanced recreational and/or educational experience of the reserve, through quality interpretation, and implementing responsible group conduct and safe practices.

There is a high level of commercial use of the coast and foreshore, dominated by water taxis, water-based commercially guided activity, charter boats and freedom kayak rentals, as well as the occasional cruise ship. These concession activities on the reserve should be managed in a way that is consistent with the characteristics for each of the Recreational Zones (see section 6.1.3 'Recreational Zones') and the outcomes for the two places. Other commercial activities, such as floating hotels and shops, have been proposed in the past for the adjacent marine area (see section 9.1.9 'Water and land-based commercial activity').

#### *Maximum levels of recreation concession activity*

To ensure all visitors have a quality, safe, scenic reserve experience, maximum levels of recreation concession activity (with conditions) in the reserve have been established. These maximum levels mainly apply to the peak six month period of 1 November to 30 April. They were established following consultation with the concessionaires who were operating along the Abel Tasman coastline prior to the foreshore becoming a reserve. They are based on the levels of activity undertaken during the 2007/08 and 2008/09 seasons. The effects of these levels of activity need to be monitored to ensure they are appropriate and effective in achieving the characteristics for the Recreational Zones (see section 8.2.18 'Monitoring').

All recreation concession activities (various water-based and/or guided activities) have been divided into units that identify the characteristics of that activity and establish maximum numbers for trips, passengers/clients/guests, guides, and/or vessels (such as kayaks). Once the units have been identified then it is possible to set limits for activities in each Recreational Zone, including site specific limits for some activities. The setting of limits for each activity has been developed as a tool to manage the maximum level of

concession activity on the reserve and the maximum number of people undertaking recreation concession activities in the reserve. The units and limits are set out in the sections below.

Where the maximum levels for the activities identified in this plan have been allocated, any new concession applications for these activities should be declined and applicants advised to use existing concessionaires to undertake the activity on their behalf. It should be noted that some or all of the levels of activities may already be allocated to existing concessionaires.

### *Recreation concession activity types*

A distinction has been made between water taxis, charter boats and other commercial activities based on the nature and effects of their operation within and adjacent to the reserve. In general, water taxis tend to transport passengers into or out of the reserve, as quickly as possible, according to a scheduled timetable; whereas charter boats tend to focus more on the journey itself, as well as the destination, and are not so intent on meeting a scheduled timetable.

The activity types (such as water taxi and charter boat) are clearly described and defined in the following sections. All activity types require specific authorisation by way of a concession. This means, for example, that a concession may allow water taxi activity (the drop off/pick up of water taxi passengers and/or kayaks on the reserve using a water taxi) in accordance with conditions relating to that activity. The same concession may also allow charter boat activity (the drop off/pick up of charter clients on the reserve using a charter boat) subject to conditions specific to that activity.

In carrying out an assessment of effects of a recreation concession activity within the reserve, the adverse effects of that activity on the reserve and the adjoining national park can be taken into account when making a decision as to conditions and limits. This provides for integrated management of activities across the two areas of land and ensures that the values of the reserve and national park are protected, in accordance with Conservation General Policy 13(c) (see Appendix 9). The Administration Committee may also be mindful of the effects of a recreation concession activity on adjacent privately owned land.

In addition, any commercial recreation activity carried out in the adjacent national park requires a separate concession to any that may be granted for activities on the reserve.

The specific activities that have been identified in this plan are not exhaustive and applications for other activities should be:

- (a) Assessed in accordance with the criteria outlined in sections 8.1 'Concessions – general' and 8.2 'Recreation concessions'; and
- (b) Considered on their merits, on a case-by-case basis, with reference to the effects of the activity on the values of the reserve and the relevant Recreational Zone characteristics and visitor experiences.

Appropriate maximum levels for new activities may also be applied. As a guide, the following activities are considered inappropriate and any applications should be declined: guided groups of clients on powered personal watercraft, except at the Coastal Access Points where motorised commercial vessels already regularly operate; hovercraft or other unconventional motorised vessels that exceed the noise levels emitted by commercial vessels currently entering the reserve (see section 8.2.15 'Noise'); and the hiring of equipment from the reserve.

### *Term and allocation of recreation concessions*

All recreation concessions for the reserve should be managed in a way that is consistent with the recreation concessions for the adjacent national park. This means that all recreation concessions for the Abel Tasman coast (park and reserve) should:

- (i) Have a common expiry date; and
- (ii) Be allocated using an allocation mechanism that is complementary to any allocation systems used for recreation concessions within the national park.

Individual concession applications should not be considered outside this process. All the recreation concession activities for the Abel Tasman can then be managed in an integrated way.

### *Liaison group*

The Administration Committee intends to form a liaison group with recreation concession holders so that information regarding the use and management of the reserve (and the adjacent national park) can be regularly discussed. It is envisaged that this would include:

- (a) The development of operational protocols, which would identify key operational opportunities or issues, and mechanisms to address the issues, prior to each season
- (b) Advising of 'early warning signs', which would identify operational opportunities or issues that may arise during a season and the response required from the concessionaires
- (c) Strategic matters relating to the implementation and monitoring of the provisions of this management plan.

Examples of the types of operational issues that this may cover include:

- (i) A particular toilet facility within the adjacent national park is becoming overloaded and concessionaires need to avoid landing on the adjoining beach until the problem has been rectified
- (ii) A beach may have been subject to erosion and there is no room to land vessels at high tide, so commercial vessels need to avoid landing around this time
- (iii) A Coastal Access Point needs to be temporarily shifted along a beach due to natural sand movement.

Feedback from the Administration Committee on the results of visitor monitoring and whether there are any concerning trends, are strategic matters that may be referred to the liaison group for consideration.

If necessary, the Administration Committee can implement sections 19(2)(b) and 55(1)(b) and (f) of the Reserves Act 1977 to officially close parts of the reserve until circumstances improve. In addition, the levels and/or conditions of concessionaire activity may be amended through a review of this management plan if a significant change occurs. These actions will protect reserve values and visitor experiences, while providing for sustainable recreational concessionaire activities over the long-term.

### *Tasman District Council Navigation Safety Bylaw*

In addition, Tasman District Council licenses commercial vessels in accordance with its Navigation Safety Bylaw. This bylaw defines a commercial vessel as a vessel that is not:

a pleasure craft<sup>11</sup>; or solely powered manually; or solely powered by sail. Tasman District Council may impose various terms and conditions on any licence, including:

- (i) *Defining the points of embarkation/disembarkation*
- (ii) *Defining the area or route of operations*
- (iii) *Limiting the number of passengers or quantity of freight*
- (iv) *Whether the operation is limited to daylight hours, or by weather conditions*
- (v) *In the case of rental vessels, whether a rescue craft must be in attendance or not*
- (vi) *Specifying safety equipment*
- (vii) *In the case of rental vessels, specifying what level of instruction must be given to hirers*
- (viii) *Requiring a number or name or other distinctive marking to be displayed on the vessel*
- (ix) *In the case of small paddle-powered vessels such as kayaks or waka, requiring the vessel to show a brightly coloured flag or paddle blades to enhance visibility when underway*
- (x) *In the case of small paddle-powered vessels such as kayaks or waka, requiring the hull of the vessel to be of a colour that contrasts with the marine environment to enhance visibility when underway.*

The licence and concession conditions should be consistent.

### ***Operational tracking devices***

The Administration Committee may require that some or all of the commercial vessels that enter the reserve are equipped with an operational tracking device. This tracking device will be linked to a centrally managed database, under the control of the Administration Committee. The information provided by this system will be used to:

- (a) Ensure compliance with concession conditions; and
- (b) Help inform the Administration Committee as to whether or not the provisions set out in this section of the plan are contributing to the Vision for the reserve as a whole and the Outcomes for the places.

## **8.2.2 Water-based commercially guided activity**

Recreation concessions are required for those water-based commercially guided activities where clients enter the reserve under their own power in a guided non-motorised watercraft and:

- (a) Make direct use of the reserve, such as for picnics or training; and/or
- (b) Use the reserve to access the adjacent national park and other public lands, or private land.

Water-based commercially guided activities should only take place in the Coastal Access Points, the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor and the South Coast, subject to a number of conditions. The amount of activity that can occur in the reserve should be consistent with the related concessions for the adjacent national park. Therefore, the water-based commercially guided activity has been divided into 'trips'; where a 'trip' is a basic unit of activity that establishes the maximum number of clients, guides and non-motorised watercraft in a group, and how often the trip can be used in one day. The following criteria should apply:

- (i) With respect to numbers of clients, guides and non-motorised watercraft – a trip may be divided into smaller groups, provided a guide accompanies each group,

---

<sup>11</sup> A pleasure craft is a craft that is not offered or used for hire or reward.

and the maximum numbers allowed are not exceeded. For example, a trip of 8 clients and 2 guides may be divided into two groups of 4 clients and 1 guide.

- (ii) With respect to timing – a trip may be utilised two times a day. Using the scenario in (i) above, 8 clients and 2 guides, totalling 10 people, may enter and leave the reserve in the morning; while in the afternoon, another group of 10 people may utilise that trip.

Combinations of the two criteria above may occur, but at no time should there ever be more than the maximum number of clients, guides and non-motorised watercraft allowed for by that trip in the reserve; nor should the numbers exceed what is available based on the trip being utilised two times a day. Also, no more than two trip groups associated with the same concessionaire should come together at the same location on the reserve for an activity, such a lunch breaks. During a trip, clients may enter and leave the reserve several times a day.

The maximum number of water-based commercially guided trips and the associated clients, guides and non-motorised watercraft that should be allowed on the reserve is set out in Table 1.

<b>TABLE 1</b>				
<b>Maximum levels of water-based commercially guided activity</b>				
<b>Water-based commercially guided activity</b>	<b>Maximum number of clients per trip</b>	<b>Maximum number of guides per trip</b>	<b>Maximum number of non-motorised watercraft per trip</b>	<b>Maximum number of trips*</b>
Kayaking/Paddleboarding	8	2	6	56 per day (in total)
Rowboat	16	4	4	
Outrigger Canoe	8	2	1	1 per day
Waka (10-18 person)	16	2	1	5 per day (in total)
Waka (6-9 person)	16	2	2	
Waka (up to 5 person)	16	4	4	

\* May be utilised two times a day.

If monitoring shows that adverse effects are resulting from the above activities then the maximum number of trips may need to be reduced, or further controls introduced, such as weekly or monthly limits (see section 8.2.18 'Monitoring').

Existing concessionaires who hold a concession for water-based commercially guided activity for the adjacent national park should be granted an equivalent concession to operate on the reserve. This will ensure consistency between the reserve and the national park, and maintain the integrity of the Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan (2008).

Other specific concession conditions that apply to water-based commercially guided activity are set out in the place sections (see Table 5, pages 121-123 and Table 6, pages 132-135).

### 8.2.3 Water taxi activity

(refer to the Glossary for the definition of a 'water taxi')

Water taxi activity covers the following being dropped off onto, or picked up from, the reserve:

- (i) People (water taxi passengers);
- (ii) Non-motorised watercraft; and/or
- (iii) Other hire equipment, goods and materials (such as back-packs and other luggage, food and other supplies, camping equipment, building equipment and other items).

This activity does not include charter clients that enter the reserve under charter boat activity or guests associated with vessels servicing floating accommodation activity.

Each 'unit' for water taxi activity consists of the following person-movements and/ or non-motorised watercraft-movements:

***Person-movement***

- (a) A water taxi passenger being dropped off onto the reserve; or
- (b) A water taxi passenger being picked up from the reserve.

***Non-motorised watercraft-movement***

- (a) A non-motorised watercraft being dropped off onto the reserve; or
- (b) A non-motorised watercraft being picked up from the reserve.

For water taxi activity there are two types of water taxi passengers and two types of non-motorised watercraft:

***Water taxi passenger types***

- (i) **Public visitors** – these water taxi passengers make up the majority of person movements on the reserve. They may be visitors travelling by themselves or as part of a commercially guided group (including the guides who accompany their clients onto the reserve) who may visit or stay overnight in the adjacent national park; and they may be day visitors to commercial businesses on private land (for example, visitors going to Awaroa Lodge for lunch).
- (ii) **Private landowners (and their guests)** – these water taxi passengers are people accessing private property adjacent to the reserve (this includes: the trustees of the Moncrieff Private Scenic Reserve; the holders of the lifetime occupancy agreements for the baches on national park land at Tinline, Bark Bay/Wairima and Uarau Point; and the occupier of the bach on unformed legal road at Stilwell Bay).

***Non-motorised watercraft types***

- (i) **Guided non-motorised watercraft** – non-motorised watercraft associated with water-based commercially guided activity.
- (ii) **Freedom/Private non-motorised watercraft** – freedom-hired (see section 8.2.8 'Freedom waterbased commercial activity') and privately owned non-motorised watercraft.

The maximum levels of person-movements and non-motorised watercraft-movements for water taxi activity that should be allowed on the reserve are set out in Table 2 (see Appendix 7 for an explanation of the processes and principles in setting these levels of activity):

**TABLE 2**  
**Maximum levels of water taxi activity**

Movement type	Water taxi passenger/ non-motorised watercraft type	Peak period (1 Nov-30 April)			Off-peak period (1 May-31 Oct) Total maximum
		Total maximum	Monthly maximum	Daily maximum	
Person movements	Public visitors	222,440	55,610	2,929	50,000
	Private landowners	No limit	No limit	No limit	No limit
Non-motorised watercraft movements	Guided non-motorised watercraft	N/A	N/A	560	560 per day
	Freedom/Private non-motorised watercraft	N/A	N/A	140	140 per day

Because the ‘Public Visitors’ contribute to the bulk of water taxi activity, monthly maximum levels have been set for these person-movements during the peak period to ensure that the water taxi activity is spread out over those six months. There are no limits on the amount of goods transportation undertaken (e.g. back-packs, food supplies, camping equipment).

Concessionaires should be required to record the number of ‘Private Landowners’ transported by water taxi, as well as the locations they are being transported to. This information is required to monitor the total person-movements by concessionaires, and to prevent abuse of the provisions in this management plan that allow unlimited numbers of private landowners and their guests to be transported into or out of the reserve.

The locations where water taxi activity may occur, and more detailed conditions of use, are set out in the place sections (see Table 5, pages 121-123 and Table 6, pages 132-135). This includes limits on the number of person movements (‘Public Visitors’) that may occur at each Coastal Access Point and at some other sites. At Torrent Bay/Rakauroa the allocation of water taxi activity should occur when this plan is approved. At the other locations the Administration Committee will determine how and when water taxi activity should be allocated based on monitoring at each of the sites. A decision to allocate will depend on: when, where and how the operators choose to distribute their clients; the effects of these visitors on the reserve and on the experiences of other visitors; and the effects on and the capacity of the infrastructure on the adjacent land. As a result, the allocation of water taxi activity may be required at all, some or maybe none of the sites.

The overall limits on water taxi activity, as set out in Table 2 above, are considered to be acceptable in terms of potential adverse effects on: the values of the reserve, the adjacent national park, and private land; and the experiences of all visitors and private landowners. Factors that can influence the ability of water taxi operators to utilise their limits fully include weather and sea conditions. If future monitoring shows adverse effects are occurring then the maximum level of activity may need to be reduced, or further controls introduced, such as when water taxi activity may occur (see section 8.2.18 ‘Monitoring’).

## 8.2.4 Charter boat activity

(refer to the Glossary for the definition of a 'charter boat')

Charter boat activity covers commercial vessels that transport clients into and from the reserve as part of a scenic trip that involves a number of stops. Generally, they do not transport non-motorised watercraft or goods and materials. Charter boat activity can take place in all the Recreational Zones, except the North Coast, subject to conditions of use that relate to specific characteristics of the vessel.

The limits for all charter boat activity relate to the maximum number of trips undertaken, rather than the number of times a charter client enters or leaves the reserve within that trip. For charter boat activity a trip may be utilised twice in one day (generally by the same vessel). This means that, provided all other criteria relating to charter boat activity are complied with, a group of people on one charter may enter and leave the reserve in the morning; while in the afternoon, another group of people on a second charter may enter and leave the reserve. Alternatively, a group of people on one charter may enter and leave the reserve in the afternoon, overnight on the vessel, and then enter and leave the reserve in the morning. At no time should there ever be more than the one vessel allowed for by that trip on the reserve.

The maximum levels of all charter boat activity that should be allowed on the reserve are set out in Table 3 (see Appendix 7 for an explanation of the processes and principles in setting these levels of activity):

TABLE 3 Maximum number of trips for all charter boat activity*			
Peak period (1 Nov-30 April)			Off-peak period (1 May-31 Oct)
Total maximum	Monthly maximum	Daily maximum	
2310	385	50	No limit

\* May be utilised two times a day.

As part of a concession for charter boat activity, there is provision to allow for group functions on the reserve that are appropriate to the relevant place and Recreational Zone. Further conditions of use are set out in the place sections (see Table 5, pages 121-123 and Table 6, pages 132-135) and are summarised in Appendix 8.

### *Combined water taxi and charter boat activity*

There are a couple of circumstances where a particular vessel may operate as both a water taxi and a charter boat at the same time. These circumstances and the conditions of operation are set out in Method 8 (pages 86-87).

## 8.2.5 Support vessel activity

(refer to the Glossary for the definition of a 'support vessel')

A support vessel should be associated with an existing concession for water-based commercially guided activity (non-motorised watercraft) and cannot transport people or other vessels (such as freedom kayaks). The vessel may enter the reserve to drop off or pick up a kayak associated with the same concession holder.

There are no maximum levels set for this type of activity as it is constrained by the concession limits for water-based commercially guided activity.

The locations where support vessel activity may occur and more detailed conditions of use are set out in the place sections (see Table 5, pages 121-123 and Table 6, pages 132-135).

### **8.2.6 Servicing floating accommodation activity**

(refer to Glossary definition for a ‘vessel servicing floating accommodation’)

Servicing floating accommodation activity relates to commercial vessels that move guests and their luggage from floating accommodation to the reserve, and vice versa. This is a very limited activity, which provides for two existing floating accommodation operations (see section 9.1.9 ‘Water and land-based commercial activity’). The maximum year-round levels of activity on the reserve should be: 1680 person-movements per month; and, 118 person-movements per day.

Further conditions of use are set out in Method 10 (page 87) and the place sections (see Table 5, pages 121-123 and Table 6, pages 132-135).

### **8.2.7 Commercially guided walking activity**

Concessions for clients taking part in a commercially guided walking activity that make use of the reserve are covered by existing concessions for the adjacent national park and within the concessions for the activities described above. There is no need to apply any additional limits or conditions of use to guided walking activity in the reserve.

### **8.2.8 Freedom water-based commercial activity**

Freedom (or independent) water-based commercial activity involves clients using bareboat charters or hired non-motorised watercraft who are not accompanied by a guide and/or skipper and:

- (a) Make direct use of the reserve, such as for picnics; and/or
- (b) Use the reserve to access the adjacent national park, other public lands or private land.

This plan sets maximum levels that should be allowed for water-based commercially guided activity (section 8.2.2 ‘Water-based commercially guided activity’), but there remains a need to consider the impact of freedom water-based commercial activity on the reserve, as well as commercially guided activity. An increase in the number of unguided visitors using unaccompanied hired vessels could lead to an increase in adverse effects on the reserve from activities associated with usage, despite the controls on commercially guided trips. In the absence of guides (who are managed through concession conditions) there is also the added risk of greater cumulative adverse effects on the reserve.

Most unguided visitors who currently enter the reserve using an unaccompanied hired vessel will be covered by one of the following existing mechanisms, which cumulatively manage the majority of visitors entering the reserve:

- (i) Those wishing to stay overnight in the adjacent national park are required to book and pay for a space in a hut or campsite. There is a limited amount of overnight accommodation available in the park.
- (ii) Those wishing to stay overnight in private accommodation adjacent to the national park need to book and pay, and there is limited availability of this type of accommodation.

- (iii) Those who wish to make use of a water taxi to transport a kayak and/ or luggage along the coastline will be part of the maximum levels placed on water taxis as to the number of passengers, kayaks or goods they can transport per day (see section 8.2.3 'Water taxi activity').

The only freedom water-based visitors (excluding private landowners) using hired vessels not covered by the above mechanisms are:

- (a) Kayakers who leave from Marahau or Kaiteriteri (generally), travel north along the coastline, visit a few beaches and then travel back again, all in one day. Given that these visitors usually have limited skills it is unlikely that many of them would be able to get further north than Watering Cove. This means that the southern portion of the South Coast is likely to be most affected by these visitors.
- (b) Visitors who drive to Totaranui or the Awaroa Road end and use their kayak during the day, without staying overnight. (There is also the possibility of unguided kayakers accessing the reserve from Wainui in the north, but their numbers are not high at the moment).
- (c) Visitors on bareboat charters, who do not use any of the support services outlined above (e.g. accommodation). The number of visitors accessing the reserve by this means is currently low compared to other means of access, but could increase over the life of this plan.

If monitoring shows that the numbers of visitors accessing the reserve by freedom water-based commercial activity are causing an adverse effect, a new bylaw should be proposed which would control access to and limit the use of the reserve by these visitors, in order to protect and preserve the reserve.

### 8.2.9 Cruise ships

(refer to the Glossary for the definition of a 'cruise ship')

Recreation concessions are required for cruise ships that occasionally visit the Abel Tasman coastline where guests enter the reserve and:

- (i) Make direct use of the reserve, such as for picnics; and/or
- (ii) Use the reserve to access the adjacent national park and other public lands, or private land.

Guests may be transported onto/off the reserve by the cruise ship's own tenders or by another concessionaire.

The overall limits for cruise ship activity relate to the maximum number of ship visits, rather than the number of times a guest enters or leaves the reserve within that visit. The maximum levels for cruise ship activity that should be allowed on the reserve are set out in Table 4.

TABLE 4 Maximum number of visits for cruise ship activity			
Peak period (1 Nov-30 April)			Off-peak period (1 May-31 Oct)
Total maximum	Monthly maximum	Daily maximum	
20	N/A	1	10

As part of a concession for cruise ship activity, there is provision to allow for group functions on the reserve that are appropriate to the relevant place.

Further conditions of use are set out in Method 13 (pages 87-88) and the place sections (see Table 5, pages 121-123 and Table 6, pages 132-135).

### **8.2.10 Organised sporting events**

There are two existing organised sporting events, both of which take place predominantly within the adjacent national park:

- (i) The Coastal Classic running race, which crosses the reserve at Onetahuti Beach
- (ii) The Gibbs Hill Challenge running race, which crosses the reserve at Anapai Bay and Anatakapau Bay.

The use of the reserve for other organised sporting events (in addition to the two above) is considered to be appropriate, and the conditions of use are set out in Method 14 (page 88).

### **8.2.11 Sale or hire of goods and equipment**

The sale or hire of goods and equipment from the reserve is not consistent with the Primary Objectives or outcomes of this plan, nor the characteristics of the Recreational Zones. Therefore, concessions should not be granted for these activities.

### **8.2.12 Personal watercraft, hovercraft, amphibious vessels, other unconventional vessels and parasailing**

In addition to the commercial vessels that have traditionally accessed the reserve, such as water taxis (e.g. single hull with outboard motors; twin hull, inboard motors) and charter boats (e.g. yachts), there is the potential for a number of other unconventional and/or novel vessel types to be used in the reserve for recreation concession purposes. This includes personal watercraft, hovercraft, amphibious vessels and other unconventional or novel vessels, such as hydrofoils, semi-submersibles, airboats and motorised kayaks. There is also the potential for commercial parasailing to take place from the reserve, within the designated water ski access lanes and reserved areas (see section 9.1.7 'Coastal waters').

The conditions of use for these types of vessels are set out in Method 15 (pages 88-89).

### **8.2.13 Land vehicles**

There are only three locations on the reserve where the use of vehicles (with the exceptions identified above) for commercial recreational purposes may be appropriate. These locations are set out in Method 16 (page 89).

### **8.2.14 Aircraft**

All aircraft landing on the reserve (which includes the hovering of any aircraft and the setting down or taking on of goods or persons from an aircraft), and taking-off from the reserve require a concession (see section 8.3.3 'Aircraft' for commercial non-recreational use). Commercial aircraft landings/take-offs for recreational purposes are considered inappropriate due to: the adverse effects on the natural and scenic values of the reserve, particularly noise; public safety issues; and because visitors can easily access the reserve from the land and the sea.

Applications to land an aircraft on the reserve, or take-off from the reserve, for commercial recreational purposes should be declined. In addition, applications to taxi a commercial seaplane onto the reserve (as a vessel and/or vehicle) should also be declined for the same reasons.

### **8.2.15 Noise**

Recreation concession activities may produce various types and levels of noise, such as engine noise from motorised vessels or vehicles, and radios and other communication devices used for operational or safety purposes. The latter are considered appropriate in the reserve, but engine noise should be a matter that is taken into account when determining whether or not an activity will adversely affect reserve values.

Concessionaires should be encouraged to use quiet technology, particularly when purchasing new motorised vessels. Other equipment, such as public address systems and generators, are likely to produce an excessive noise that adversely affects natural quiet and the experience of other visitors. Such use is not considered to be appropriate and should not be approved.

In addition, there may be applications for new recreation concession activities that are not currently operating on the reserve. In these cases, the noise effects should be carefully considered. Any activity that may increase the noise environment on the reserve should not be approved.

The Administration Committee recognises the practical difficulties of setting and enforcing noise limits on coastal activities and in remote locations. However, the Administration Committee does have an obligation to protect and preserve the intrinsic values of the reserve, and needs to work with the noise control authority, Tasman District Council, on appropriate control measures for activities on the adjacent coastal waters and private land that result in noise (see section 9.1.4 'Neighbouring lands' and section 9.1.7 'Coastal waters').

### **8.2.16 Advertising**

Advertising is an intrusion that many visitors to the reserve do not expect or wish to see, so it is not generally appropriate. The conditions for advertising are set out in Method 17 (page 89).

### **8.2.17 Other concession activities**

In addition to the specific activities covered above, there are likely to be a number of situations where a concession application is made for additional or other types of commercial recreation activity on the reserve. This could be for:

- (a) A one-off concession for an activity covered by sections 8.2.2 to 8.2.6 above, where an applicant wishes to use the reserve on a one-off occasion, or where an existing concessionaire with a low number of allocated units needs additional units to cater for an occasional large group. Large groups such as tertiary educational institutions (from New Zealand and overseas), cruise ship groups and charity treks may visit the reserve from time to time.
- (b) Tertiary educational institutions that regularly visit the reserve, such as the Nelson/Marlborough Institute of Technology, Whenua Iti Outdoors Trust and Tai Poutini Polytechnic.
- (c) Businesses offering their services for organising and supporting weddings, birthday parties, corporate team building and other similar events or activities. While access to the reserve may be provided by an existing concessionaire, the actual event requires an additional concession.

Applicants seeking a one-off concession should first be encouraged to use existing concessionaires to carry out the necessary activity. If there is no spare capacity amongst the units of activity already allocated the relevant criteria as set out in method 18 (pages 89-90) should be applied. Method 18 also identifies the relevant criteria for tertiary educational institutions and events or activities organised by a service business.

### 8.2.18 Monitoring

Each recreation concession is monitored to assess:

- (i) Any adverse environmental effects of the recreation concession activities.
- (ii) The visitor experience in each Recreational Zone and the extent to which the provisions in this plan and the maximum levels set for recreation concession activities have been successful in achieving the objectives and outcomes. This monitoring needs to include visitor surveys and observations at particular points.
- (iii) Compliance with recreation concession conditions.

This information will contribute to any future review or amendment of the recreation concession management provisions in this plan, including the maximum levels for the different activities.

#### 8.2 Policy

1. To protect and preserve the intrinsic values of the reserve by managing recreation concessions on the reserve to ensure they are consistent with the Primary Objectives of this plan, the objectives and outcomes for the places, and the characteristics of the Recreational Zones.

#### 8.2 Methods

##### General

1. *Recreation concessions may be allowed, with appropriate conditions, where the activity is consistent with the visitor experiences and characteristics sought for the relevant Recreational Zone(s), and the outcome for the place.*
2. *Recreation concessions should not be allowed where the activity may have potential adverse effects on the reserve or adjacent national park, and/or the activity involves:*
  - (a) *Guided groups of clients on powered personal watercraft (except at Coastal Access Points)*
  - (b) *The selling or hiring of goods or equipment from the reserve*
  - (c) *A commercial aircraft landing on, or taking off from, the reserve for recreational purposes, or taxiing a commercial seaplane onto or from the reserve for recreational purposes*

- (d) *Using powered vessels or equipment (other than the commercial vessels provided for by this plan, or communication devices used for operational or safety purposes) that produces excessive noise.*
3. *Recreation concessions issued for the reserve should:*
    - (a) *Be consistent with those granted for the adjacent national park with respect to the expiry date and any allocation mechanism used*
    - (b) *Provide for further limits to be placed on the activity if monitoring shows that adverse effects are occurring.*
  4. *Form a liaison group with recreation concessionaires to regularly discuss information regarding the use and management of the reserve.*
  5. *Commercial vessels should be required to install an operational tracking device as a condition of their concession activity.*

**Water-based commercially guided activity**

6. *Water-based commercially guided activity should be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
  - (a) *The activity is restricted to Coastal Access Points, the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor and the South Coast*
  - (b) *No more than two trip groups associated with the same concessionaire come together on the reserve at the same location*
  - (c) *Conditions are consistent with the relevant concession for this activity in the adjacent national park with respect to the maximum number of trips, clients, guides and non-motorised watercraft (as set out in Table 1)*
  - (d) *The relevant conditions of use in Tables 5 (pp 121-123) and 6 (pp 132-135).*

**Water taxi activity**

7. *Water taxi activity should be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
  - (a) *The maximum levels of person-movements and non-motorised watercraft-movements, as set out in Table 2, are not exceeded*
  - (b) *The concessionaire records the number of person-movements and non-motorised watercraft-movements undertaken, and the locations where this occurs*
  - (c) *The relevant conditions of use in Tables 5 (pp 121-123) and 6 (pp 132-135).*

**Charter boat activity**

8. *Charter boat activity should be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
  - (a) *The maximum number of trips, as set out in Table 3, is not exceeded*
  - (b) *At no time is there ever more than one vessel per trip on the reserve*
  - (c) *Large vessels (that can carry 50 people or more), or vessels that operate predominantly under sail, can pick up/drop off water taxi passengers at Coastal Access Points while transporting charter clients at the same time, provided:*

- (i) *All relevant plan provisions for both types of activity and passenger/client movements are complied with*
  - (ii) *Each time a vessel is operating as both a water taxi and a charter boat, the concessionaire records the number of people transported as charter clients and the locations that they visited*
  - (iii) *An individual person on the vessel is not both a water taxi passenger and a charter boat client on the same trip.*
- (d) *The relevant conditions of use in Tables 5 (pp 121-123) and 6 (pp 132-135).*

**Support vessel activity**

9. *Support vessel activity should be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
- (a) *The support vessel is associated with an existing (as at May 2011) concession for water-based commercially guided activity*
  - (b) *No vessels (other than those associated with the water-based commercially guided activity) and no people are transported*
  - (c) *The relevant conditions of use in Tables 5 (pp 121-123) and 6 (pp 132-135).*

**Servicing floating accommodation activity**

10. *Servicing floating accommodation activity should be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
- (a) *The activity is restricted to Coastal Access Points*
  - (b) *The maximum year-round levels do not exceed 1680 person-movements per month and 118 person-movements per day*
  - (c) *There is no change to the nature of the two existing operations that would result in increased person-movements or cause adverse effects on the values of the reserve or visitor experiences*
  - (d) *The relevant conditions of use in Tables 5 (pp 121-123) and 6 (pp 132-135).*

**Commercially guided walking activity**

11. *Commercially guided walking activity should be allowed in accordance with the relevant concession for this activity in the adjacent national park.*

**Freedom water-based commercial activity**

12. *Monitor the effects of freedom water-based commercial activity on the reserve, and consider seeking a new bylaw which would control access to and limit use of the reserve by visitors undertaking this activity.*

**Cruise ship activity**

13. *Cruise ship activity should be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
- (a) *The disembarkation and embarkation of guests is restricted to Coastal Access Points*
  - (b) *The maximum number of visits, as set out in Table 4, is not exceeded*
  - (c) *The Administration Committee is advised at least 10 working days prior to any visit*

- (d) *The ship does not anchor within the Tonga Island Marine Reserve or any marine area of biological importance<sup>12</sup>*
- (e) *No more than 40 guests are within the reserve at the point of disembarkation or embarkation at any time*
- (f) *No more than 7 tenders, water taxis or other commercial vessels are used to transport guests between the ship and the reserve*
- (g) *No more than 200 guests in total enter the reserve per visit*
- (h) *The relevant conditions of use in Tables 5 (pp 121-123) and 6 (pp 132-135).*

**Organised sporting events**

14. *Organised sporting events may be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*

- (a) *For existing events -*
  - (i) *The Coastal Classic running race occurs in September and is limited to 350 participants, including support staff*
  - (ii) *The Gibbs Hill Challenge running race occurs in August and is limited to 70 participants, including support staff*
- (b) *For new events –*
  - (i) *Competitors do not enter the adjacent national park during the competitive phase of the sporting event (in accordance with the provisions of the Abel Tasman National Park management plan)*
  - (ii) *It can be demonstrated that the event provides the competitors with an opportunity to appreciate the values of the reserve and the adjacent national park*
  - (iii) *No events occur in the North Coast*
  - (iv) *There are no more than 2 regular and 1 one-off event(s) per year*
  - (v) *Competitors are limited to activities on foot, involving swimming and/or the use of non-motorised vessels*
  - (vi) *Any event occurring between 1 November and 31 March, and during the Easter and Labour weekends, can only use Coastal Access Points and is limited to 40 people (competitors and support crew)*
  - (vii) *Any event occurring between 1 April and 31 October (excluding Easter and Labour weekends) is limited to 300 people (competitors and support crew).*

**Personal watercraft, hovercraft, amphibious vessels or other unconventional or novel vessels**

15. *The commercial use of personal watercraft, hovercraft, amphibious vessels or other unconventional or novel vessels may be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*

<sup>12</sup> Figure 12 - *A Report on the Intertidal and Shallow Subtidal Ecology of the Abel Tasman National Park, Nelson.* RJ Davidson, Department of Conservation, Occasional Publication No. 4, 1992.

- (a) *The activity can comply with all conditions of use set out in this plan for the operation of commercial vessels*
- (b) *There are no adverse effect on the values of the reserve, such as noise or damage, over and above what currently occurs from the use of conventional commercial vessels*
- (c) *There is no increased risk to visitors, including from air, water and/or sand movement.*

**Other vehicles**

16. *Except as provided for above, the use of vehicles for commercial recreational purposes may be allowed in the following locations:*
- (a) *Within the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land, where paying guests and their luggage are being transported to private accommodation*
  - (b) *Within the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor*
  - (c) *On the two boat ramps at Totaranui.*

**Advertising**

17. *Advertising may be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
- (a) *The advertising directly relates to the reserve or adjoining national park, and is of a size and scale that does not detract from reserve or park values*
  - (b) *Trade sign writing normally carried on vehicles or vessels*
  - (c) *Brand names normally carried on equipment and supplies.*

**Other recreation concession activities**

18. *Recreation concession activities not covered above should be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
- (a) *One-off water-based commercially guided activity - 10 trips per year and 2 per day in the peak period (1 Nov – 30 April), and 20 trips per year and 4 per day in the off-peak period (1 May – 31 Oct), consistent with that for the adjacent national park*
  - (b) *Other one-off activities – assess the application on a case-by-case basis and have regard to all the provisions of this plan that relate to the specific activity being applied for, in particular the potential effect of the proposed activity on the experience of other visitors to the reserve at that time and location*
  - (c) *Tertiary educational institutions - 150 non-motorised watercraft trips per year, with a maximum of 2 per day, consistent with that for the adjacent national park*
  - (d) *Events or activities organised by a service business – assess the application on a case-by-case basis, and have regard to the potential effect of the proposed event or activity on the experience of other visitors to the reserve at that time and location. Conditions may be imposed that limit where the event or activity can occur, the numbers of people allowed onto the reserve consistent with the Recreational Zone, and the time of day that the activity can take place.*

- (e) *Concession conditions are the same as for other concession activities appropriate to the place and Recreational Zone where the activity is to take place.*

**Monitoring**

19. *All recreation concessions should be monitored to assess effects on visitor experiences and the values of the reserve, to ensure that the characteristics for the Recreational Zones are being maintained, and to ensure compliance with concession conditions.*

### **8.3 Non-recreation concessions**

#### **8.3.1 Utilities**

Utilities that are visible, such as pylons or poles for electricity transmission or telecommunication, are considered to be inappropriate in the reserve and approval should not be given. However, any underground utilities, such as water pipelines, that are not visible and do not adversely affect reserve values may be appropriate. Consideration should be given to potential effects on foreshore habitats and coastal processes (during and after installation), including the cumulative effects of the activity, as well as effects on historical and cultural values.

#### **8.3.2 Easements**

The presence of private land adjacent to the reserve may result in requests for easements across the reserve for water-supply or stormwater discharge pipes, electricity or telecommunication purposes. These should be allowed in association with the utilities identified above.

#### **8.3.3 Aircraft**

(see section 8.2.14 'Aircraft' for recreational aircraft landings/take-offs)

A concession is required for aircraft landings/take-offs in the reserve for non-recreation purposes (except for management purposes, emergencies, search and rescue, and in accordance with the Defence Training Agreement), regardless of whether it is a private or commercial aircraft. Concessions may be granted for adjoining private landowners to access their property (see section 11.7.2.3 'Aircraft' for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land). Aircraft landings (which includes the hovering of any aircraft and the setting down or taking on of goods or persons from an aircraft) and take-offs for non-recreation commercial purposes are considered inappropriate given the natural and scenic values of the reserve, associated safety issues, and the ability of visitors to access the reserve by land and sea. Applications for these aircraft landings/take-offs should be declined.

Use of aircraft by the Defence Force is discouraged unless there is a net conservation benefit to the reserve, such as providing air support for the building of facilities in the adjoining national park.

#### **8.3.4 Coastal fishing**

Recreational fishing is provided for by the general authorisation (see section 3.1.2 'Fishing and the taking of seaweed and driftwood' for recreational fishing).

When the foreshore was made a scenic reserve, the right to take or kill indigenous fauna for commercial fishing purposes was retained as a condition of establishment of the

reserve. This action was specifically taken to allow any existing commercial fishing, including eeling, whitebaiting and the commercial taking of shellfish, within the reserve to continue (as it would otherwise have become prohibited under section 50(1) of the Reserves Act 1977) until the effects of the activity could be addressed through this management plan.

Commercial eel fishing could potentially occur in the reserve, such as where the Awaroa River enters the Awaroa Inlet, but there is no record of any past commercial eel fishing along the Abel Tasman coast (or in the adjacent national park). This commercial activity is considered to be inappropriate due to the vulnerability of the species (particularly the 'at risk' long-fin eel) and the status of the reserve (indigenous fauna should be preserved, as far as possible). Any applications for commercial eeling should be declined.

Given the high visitor use and significant natural values of the reserve, and its connection to the adjacent national park, other commercial fishing (including whitebaiting and the taking of shellfish) is also considered to be inappropriate in this reserve and any applications should be declined.

### **8.3.5 Removal of sand, shingle or other natural mineral material**

Historically, sand, shingle or other natural mineral materials may have been removed from the reserve in minor quantities. A concession is now required for such activities. Removal of sand, shingle or other natural mineral material from the reserve is not considered to be appropriate due to the potential for adverse effects on natural values, including natural coastal processes, and being inconsistent with the Primary Objectives of this plan<sup>13</sup>. Concessions for these activities should not be granted, except where it is carried out in accordance with section 11.7.2.1 'Coastal protection works' (for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land) and any adverse effects are avoided.

The reserve is unlikely to come under pressure for mining activities. However, in assessing any application for an access arrangement in the part of the reserve that does not overlay the Tonga Island Marine Reserve, the scenic reserve status of the land and the objectives of this management plan, as well as the actual and potential adverse effects of any such activity on the natural, recreational, historical and cultural values of the reserve should be taken into account and such applications should be declined. The reserve should be added to Schedule 4 of the Crown Minerals Act 1991 to prevent any access arrangement being allowed.

### **8.3.6 Commercial filming and photography**

Filming and photography generally focuses on the scenic coastline of the reserve and the adjacent national park. Applications for commercial filming and photography concessions should be assessed in accordance with Conservation General Policy 11.5(a) and (b) (see Appendix 9). The conditions of use are set out in Method 10 (page 92).

Filming should also be carried out in line with the 'Filming on Public Conservation Lands' Code of Practice, developed jointly by the Department of Conservation and Film New Zealand (available on the Department of Conservation's website).

### **8.3.7 Monitoring**

Non-recreation concessions should be monitored to assess:

- (i) Any adverse environmental effects of the concession activities.

---

<sup>13</sup> The *de minimis* approach ('too small to be concerned with') will apply to very small amounts.

(ii) Compliance with concession conditions.

This information will contribute to any future review or amendment of the concession management provisions in this plan.

**8.3 Policy**

1. To protect and preserve the intrinsic values of the reserve by managing non-recreation concession activities on the reserve to ensure that they are consistent with the Primary Objectives of this plan, the objectives and outcomes for the places, and the characteristics of the Recreational Zones.

**8.3 Methods**

1. *Utility structures that are visible on the surface of the reserve should not be allowed.*
2. *Utility structures that are not visible on the surface of the reserve and do not adversely affect reserve values may be allowed.*
3. *Easements for approved utility structures in the reserve should be allowed.*
4. *Aircraft landings on, or taking off from, the reserve for non-recreation commercial purposes should not be allowed, due to associated safety issues and the ability of visitors to access the reserve by land and sea, and in order to protect and preserve the natural and scenic values of the reserve.*
5. *Proposals by the Defence Force to use the airspace above the reserve for training flights should be discouraged, and any Defence Force land activities should comply with the Defence Training Agreement.*
6. *Commercial eeling or fishing should not be allowed, as these activities are inconsistent with the status and values of the reserve.*
7. *The removal of sand, shingle or other natural mineral material from the reserve should not be allowed, except where the activity is in accordance with Method 2 (section 11.7, page 125) and any adverse effects are avoided.*
8. *Access arrangements for mining should not be allowed, as this activity is inconsistent with the status and values of the reserve.*
9. *Seek to add the reserve to Schedule 4 of the Crown Minerals Act 1991.*
10. *Commercial filming and photography may be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
  - (a) *The activity is consistent with the characteristics of the Recreational Zone in which it takes place*
  - (b) *No aircraft landings/take-offs occur on the reserve*
  - (c) *The provisions of this plan regarding the use of vehicles and animals, and the construction of facilities, are complied with*
  - (d) *The activity uses existing means of access.*
11. *Non-recreation concessions should be monitored to assess any adverse effects of an activity and compliance with conditions.*

## 8.4 Other authorisations for non-commercial activities

Under the Reserves Act 1977 (the Act) there are a number of non-commercial activities that may be carried out in the reserve that require a permit or other authorisation from the Administration Committee. These activities include:

- (i) the cutting or taking of plant material (section 42 of the Act);
- (ii) permanent or temporary personal accommodation, including use of a boat (section 44 of the Act);
- (iii) the erection of shelters by voluntary organisations or educational institutions (section 45 of the Act);
- (iv) the taking of specimens (flora or fauna or rock mineral or soil) for scientific or educational purposes (section 49 of the Act);
- (v) the taking or killing of fauna (section 50 of the Act); and
- (vi) those identified as offences (section 94 of the Act), for example, planting a tree or erecting a sign, for which no bylaw or general authorisation has been issued.

An authorisation is also required under section 53 of the Wildlife Act 1953 where an application is made to take living or dead indigenous animals or birds. In addition, a licence or authorisation may be required under the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983 for the taking of freshwater fish. Such authorisations are also required for customary use (see section 2.2 'Customary use'). Other authorisations may also be required under other Acts or Regulations.

Customary and recreational fishing and the taking of seaweed and driftwood is provided for by the general authorisation (see section 3.1.2 'Fishing and the taking of seaweed and driftwood'), so individual permits are not required. Neither is an authorisation needed where a vessel is used for temporary personal accommodation, as this is covered by the bylaws (see section 6.1.6 'Camping and overnight stays in vessels').

### 8.4.1 Processing applications for an authorisation

Any application for an authorisation must comply with, or be consistent with, the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977; any other relevant Acts; the Conservation General Policy 2005; the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Management Strategy; and this reserve management plan.

All activities requiring an authorisation should avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects (including cumulative effects) and maximise any positive effects on natural resources and historical and cultural heritage, and on the benefit and enjoyment of the public, including public access.

While each application will be dealt with on a case-by-case basis, an authorisation should not be granted for:

- (a) the cutting or taking of plant material, or the taking or killing of fauna<sup>14</sup>, where it is for private use; or
- (b) the erection of shelters by voluntary organisations or educational institutions, as it is not considered appropriate for the reserve (see section 7.2 'Other facilities and structures').

---

<sup>14</sup> Excluding those activities covered by the general authorisation.

Further requirements for applications for authorisations relating to scientific research are set out below.

#### 8.4.2 Scientific research

Successful management of the reserve requires a sound understanding of the patterns and processes of the natural world, of the impacts of use, and of the broader contribution that this reserve makes to the region and New Zealand.

Scientists and organisations who are not working for, or on behalf of, the Administration Committee require a concession to undertake scientific research in the reserve, and they require an authorisation under the Reserves Act 1977 if they wish to take plant or animal samples, or trap animals. In addition, they will need an authorisation under section 53 of the Wildlife Act 1953 if they wish to move, take, or capture animal species protected under that Act.

Scientific research can provide useful information to the Administration Committee regarding the management of: visitors; indigenous fauna and flora, and habitats; pests; historical, cultural, archaeological, geological, biological or other scientific features; and the landscapes in the reserve.

Although the primary mandate of the Administration Committee is to protect and preserve the intrinsic values of the reserve, which makes the taking of indigenous plants or animals generally inappropriate, improving the management of indigenous species, habitats, ecosystems and natural features in the reserve is important.

Conservation General Policy 12(a) (see Appendix 9) sets out the criteria where research and monitoring, which includes surveys by external providers, should be allowed.

Applications to take samples for scientific purposes should be allowed, where it is in accordance with the provisions of the legislation and Conservation General Policy 12(d) (see Appendix 9). A precautionary approach is appropriate in a scenic reserve, particularly where little is known about the effects of an activity or use.

#### 8.4.3 Monitoring

The effects of authorised activities undertaken in the reserve on the natural resources, historical and cultural heritage, and on the benefit and enjoyment of the public, including public access, should be monitored. Concessions may include conditions requiring the holder to monitor the effects of any activity carried out. This monitoring will help to inform the Administration Committee when making future management decisions about new applications for those authorisations identified above.

#### 8.4 Policy

1. To provide for authorisations in the reserve that are consistent with the Primary Objectives of this plan and protect and preserve the intrinsic natural, historical, recreational and cultural values of the reserve.

#### **8.4 Methods**

1. *Authorisations for the cutting or taking of plant material, or the taking or killing of fauna for private use (other than that provided for by the bylaws or general authorisation, or for customary use) should not be granted, as these activities are inconsistent with the status and values of the reserve.*
2. *Authorisations for the erection of shelters by voluntary organisations or educational institutions should not be granted, as they are inappropriate in the reserve.*
3. *Authorisations for scientific research should be granted where it is in accordance with Conservation General Policy 12(a) and a precautionary approach is taken.*
4. *Monitor the effects of authorised activities on the values of the reserve.*

## 9. Community relations

---

Activities carried out on the reserve are also within the jurisdiction of the Tasman District Council under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), as the reserve is within the Coastal Marine Area. In terms of the RMA, the Administration Committee can advocate, through the planning processes carried out by Tasman District Council, for the protection of the reserve's intrinsic values and the control of activities outside the reserve that could have adverse effects on the reserve.

### 9.1 Public participation in management of the reserve

The Administration Committee manages the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve and the values therein on behalf of the people of New Zealand. The Committee's role is dependent on the support and understanding of all the people associated with this reserve i.e. tangata whenua, visitors, local landowners, commercial operators, scientists, other public agencies, non-government organisations and interest groups. Effective relationships between the Administration Committee and these people and organisations can enhance the achievement of the outcomes for this reserve. An example of this is the Abel Tasman Birdsong Trust, a partnership between commercial operators, the community and the Department of Conservation that aims to protect and enhance biodiversity and improve the visitor experience in Abel Tasman National Park.

One way that people and organisations can be involved is to offer their services, in a voluntary capacity, to work with the Administration Committee in protecting and preserving the values of the reserve. The Administration Committee intends to provide information on general conservation awareness and educational activities, as well as specific projects so that the support and understanding of these people is increased.

#### 9.1.1 Local economies

The presence of the reserve and adjacent national park provides significant benefits to the surrounding communities, particularly by bringing tourism and its associated income to the area. A study in 2005<sup>15</sup> showed that the Abel Tasman coast, including the reserve and the adjacent national park, contributed 45 million dollars a year to the Nelson/Tasman region. Use of the reserve and the adjacent national park also provided 370 full time job equivalents, which in turn contributed 11 million dollars per year in extra household income to the region.

The management of the reserve can therefore have a significant effect on the economy of communities, both local and regional. The Administration Committee seeks a constructive relationship with these communities and commercial operators and, where possible, to allow them to use the reserve for activities that do not adversely affect the intrinsic values of the reserve or other visitors. It is important for the communities located adjacent to the reserve, and tangata whenua, to feel a sense of being involved in the management and protection of the reserve.

#### 9.1.2 Consultation

Consultation is an ongoing and evolving process which calls for regular meetings and liaison with tangata whenua, plus other affected and interested parties, and key

---

<sup>15</sup> 'Regional Economic Impacts of Abel Tasman National Park and Queen Charlotte Track', Butcher Partners Ltd, July 2005.

stakeholders, such as the local community, neighbouring landowners, farming, conservation and recreation groups, tourism organisations and commercial operators. Such consultation is required in order to achieve effective management of the reserve and public support for that management regime.

### **9.1.3 Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum**

In 1998, following a request from the New Zealand Conservation Authority, the Department of Conservation released a discussion document seeking the views of the public on a proposal to add the foreshore adjoining the Abel Tasman National Park to the national park. As a result of concerns raised about this proposal an independent advisory committee (the Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum) was set up to allow representatives of various stakeholders to assess other options for management of the foreshore, in order to address concerns associated with rising visitor numbers and their impacts on the adjoining national park. The Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum recommended that the foreshore be made a reserve and that the reserve be managed by both the Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation according to conservation values and adjoining land status. Subsequently, the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve was created, with the entire reserve under the management of the Administration Committee.

The Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum has continued as an advisory body to both Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation. The Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum was involved in the development of the Abel Tasman National Park management plan and contributed to the preparation of the draft management plan for the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve.

The Abel Tasman Advisory Forum will continue to meet to discuss issues, provide advice and receive information on the implementation of this management plan.

The stakeholders on the Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum will continue to comprise representatives from: the Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and Awaroa residents groups; the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board; Tasman District Council; Nelson-Tasman Tourism; Ngāti Rārua, Ngāti Tama and Te Ātiawa; the Department of Conservation; the Royal Forest & Bird Protection Society of New Zealand Inc; commercial operators; and boating groups.

### **9.1.4 Neighbouring lands**

There are private lands and small settlements bounded by the reserve and national park. The people who live in these areas value the reserve and park environment and their lifestyle choice, so their interests and experiences need to be recognised, along with those of other visitors.

The reserve provides benefits to neighbouring lands including food supplies and amenity values. Communities and adjacent land managers provide benefits to the reserve through assistance with pest control (e.g. at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa) and ecological restoration. However, neighbouring lands can also have adverse effects on the reserve from increased visitor numbers, commercial use, vehicles, wandering animals, pollutants, weed spread and other associated effects.

Private lodges and other commercial accommodation for visitors to the area are located in the adjacent private lands and settlements. Future development within adjoining lands and the settlements at Awaroa, Anchorage and Torrent Bay/ Rakauroa and in several other small bays will have a marked effect on the nature and level of use of the reserve. The most important issues are the type and scale of business

development permitted in these areas, restrictions on subdivision, and environmental constraints on any building or site modifications.

Any development on the adjacent private lands and settlements should be sensitively located, scaled, designed and landscaped; and any commercial activities should be sustainable, complementary, visitor-based businesses. Tall or visually intrusive buildings on adjacent private lands and settlements would be considered inappropriate, as would activities that are noisy, industrial, or polluting.

### **9.1.5 Unformed legal roads, accreted land and other additions**

The Abel Tasman National Park management plan identifies several unformed legal roads adjoining the reserve that should be stopped and added to the park. In addition, there is a short length of unformed legal road in the estuary at Frenchman Bay/Potikitawa, as shown on Map 5, page 101, that the Administration Committee considers should be resumed or stopped and re-classified as scenic reserve. There are also areas of unalienated Crown land, as shown on Maps 3, 4 and 5, pages 99, 100 and 101, that should be re-classified as national park or scenic reserve, whichever is the most appropriate<sup>16</sup>. This would allow for improved integrated management across the Abel Tasman National Park and scenic reserve land. Existing structures can be authorised by granting leases for occupation of reserve or national park land.

Also, the foreshore in front of the Abel Tasman memorial (part of Abel Tasman National Park) should be added to the reserve (see Map 6, page 102).

### **9.1.6 Aircraft**

The Administration Committee cannot control over-flight of the reserve by aircraft, as this is under the jurisdiction of the Civil Aviation Authority (CAA). CAA rules state that aircraft cannot fly below 500 feet unless they have filed a flight plan, or are landing or taking off. The CAA should be asked to raise this minimum flight level over the reserve. The Administration Committee also intends to work with aircraft operators to develop operational guidelines, for over-flying the reserve, to minimise disturbance to indigenous birds and marine mammals, to protect natural quiet and other reserve values, and to avoid the effects of engine emissions. These guidelines should be consistent with those that are to be developed for the adjacent national park.

### **9.1.7 Coastal waters**

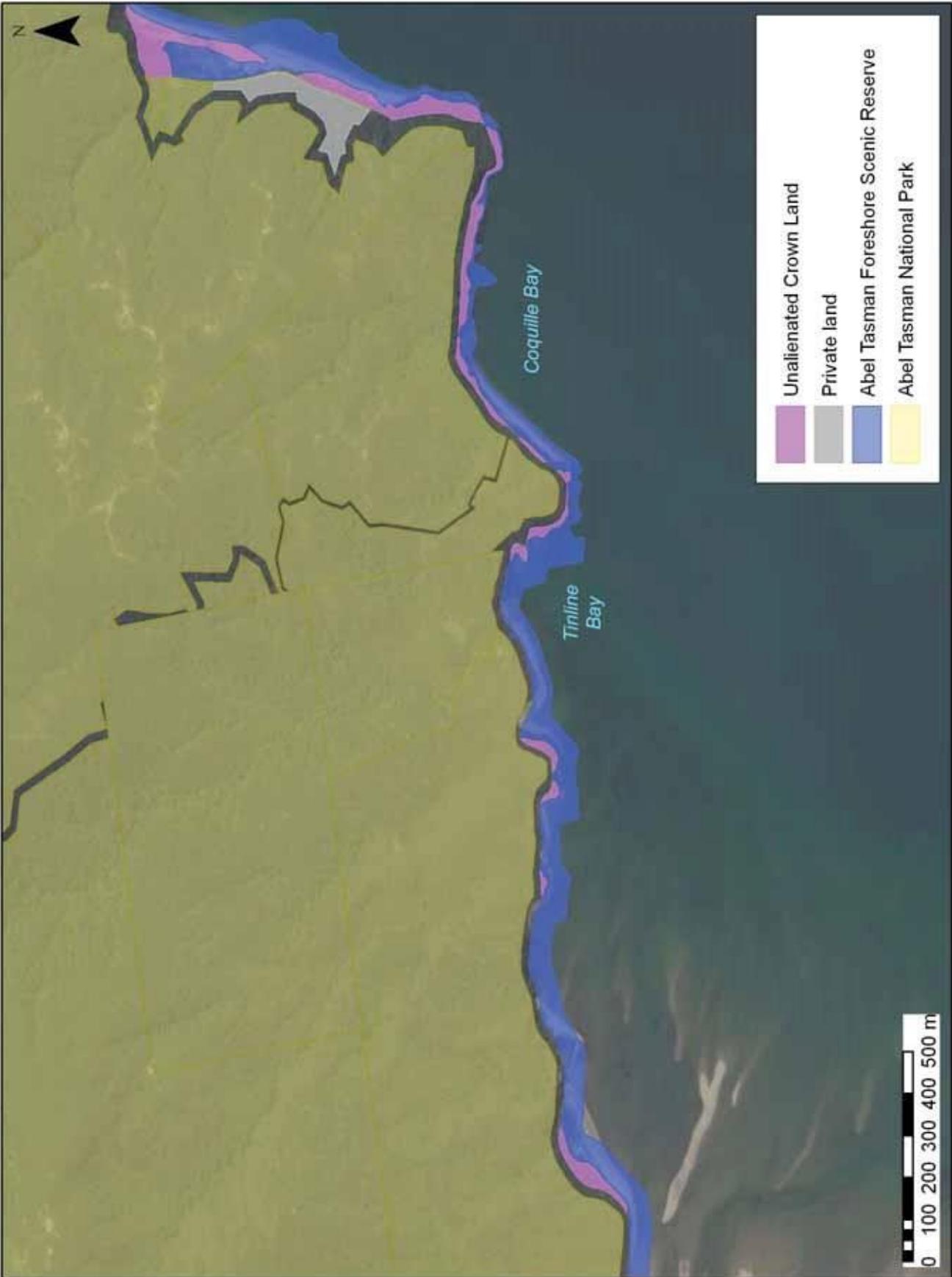
The Abel Tasman coast is an important focus for activities within and adjacent to the reserve, with activities on the water forming an important part of the visitor experience. Tasman District Council and Maritime New Zealand have responsibilities for water-based activities under the Maritime Transport Act 1994 and the Resource Management Act 1991 (see Appendix 2). Tasman District Council manages these activities through their Navigation Safety Bylaw and the provisions of the Tasman Resource Management Plan.

There are existing water ski lanes (where water skiing can take place between sunrise and sunset), which are all managed by Tasman District Council and subject to different operating restrictions, at the following locations:

---

<sup>16</sup> The relevant provisions of the Local Government Act 1974, Public Works Act 1981, Land Act 1948 and/or the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 will apply.

Map 3: Unalienated Crown land, Tinline Bay and Coquille Bay



Map 4: Unalienated Crown land, Apple Tree Bay/Whenuakura and Stilwell Bay



Map 5: Unformed legal road, reserve land and unalienated Crown land, Torrent Bay/Rakauroa, Boundary Bay, Frenchman Bay/Potikitawa and Sandfly bay



Map 6: Foreshore adjacent to Abel Tasman Memorial



- (a) Stilwell Bay – northern end of beach, 150 m wide, from Labour weekend (late October) to the end of daylight saving the following year (early April)
- (b) Adele Island/Motuarero-nui – off the sandspit (exposed at low tide) on the western-most point of the island, 220 m wide, from Labour weekend (late October) to the end of daylight saving the following year (early April)
- (c) Anchorage – western end of beach, 200 m wide, from Labour weekend (late October) to the end of daylight saving the following year (early April)
- (d) Torrent Bay/Rakauroa – northern end of beach, 140 m wide, one hour either side of high water from Labour weekend (late October) to the end of daylight saving the following year (early April)
- (e) Totaranui – northern end of beach (south of boat ramp), 200 m wide, year round.

There should be no new water ski lanes in the reserve, unless it relates to moving an existing water ski lane to a more appropriate location.

The water ski lanes should be actively managed during the summer to ensure the relevant Navigation Safety Bylaw is being complied with, particularly vessel speeds close to the shore outside of the water ski access lanes.

The main water-based issues relate to:

- (i) The expansion of commercial activities carried out on the water
- (ii) Potential conflicts between motorised vessels, non-motorised vessels, water skiers, swimmers, fishers and other coastal water users
- (iii) The noise, wash and pollution resulting from some water-based activities
- (iv) Water safety and biosecurity, resulting from the large number and variety of vessels using the area.

Integration of the administration of the coastal waters with that of the reserve and adjacent national park will improve management along the coast. This includes the control and management of activities on the coastal waters that may adversely affect the values of the reserve, particularly commercial activities (see section 9.1.9 'Water and land-based commercial activity') and water skiing (see section 6.1.10 'Advocacy').

### **9.1.8 Discharges from vessels**

The discharge of sewage and the dropping of litter from private and commercial vessels on or adjacent to the reserve are of concern. The Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998 require vessels to go more than 500m off shore, and more than 200m from Tonga Island Marine Reserve, before discharging sewage. In addition, the Tasman Resource Management Plan requires resource consent for vessels discharging sewage into the coastal marine area. These regulations, rules and resource consent conditions should be actively enforced to prevent any discharge of sewage or litter within 500m of the reserve.

Bylaws prohibit the discharge of any human waste, litter or similar materials within the reserve. These bylaws should be actively enforced by the Administration Committee.

### **9.1.9 Water and land-based commercial activity**

The possible operation of commercial enterprises on the water (outside of the reserve) is of concern, due to adverse impacts on the reserve and adjacent national

park. For example, floating shops, bars, equipment rental operations and accommodation have the potential to increase visitor use and crowding of the reserve and adjacent park facilities, to intrude visually, to create noise, to pollute the adjoining waters, and to diminish the experience of visitors to the reserve by reducing their enjoyment of the reserve in its natural state.

There are two existing floating accommodation operations. Specific controls should be sought to ensure that there are no further, and no increase in the number or scale of, commercial enterprises permitted on the coastal waters adjacent to the reserve.

Operators offering freedom water-based commercial activity (see section 8.2.8 'Freedom water-based commercial activity') should be asked to provide all vessels with portable toileting facilities that enable the collection and removal of human waste from sites where there are no toilets provided. This will help their clients to comply with the bylaws regarding pollution and the disposal of human waste.

There are already several places on adjacent private land offering accommodation and/or food to visitors to the reserve and adjoining national park. There is the possibility that new, similar commercial enterprises may wish to open up or that existing businesses may wish to expand. These activities also have the potential to adversely affect the values of the reserve, such as from increased visitor use, increased landings of commercial vessels, and noise. There should be no new, and no increase in the number or scale of, such commercial enterprises permitted on adjacent private land where the values of the reserve may be adversely affected.

#### 9.1.10 Moorings and other structures

(see section 7.2 'Other facilities and structures' regarding moorings and other structures that are within the reserve)

Moorings outside the reserve boundary are administered solely by Tasman District Council under the Resource Management Act 1991. They exist at several points along the Abel Tasman coast, mostly adjoining private lands and settlements, which is appropriate. Elsewhere, they can detract from the scenic values of the reserve. There should be no new moorings or other structures adjacent to the reserve (other than in accordance with policy 21.2.3.18 of the Tasman Resource Management Plan), particularly in front of the national park.

Jetties and boat ramps would inevitably need to cross the reserve and therefore the Administration Committee can address any applications for these types of structures through the concession process.

#### 9.1 Policies

1. To establish and maintain a constructive relationship with commercial operators, local communities, tangata whenua, neighbours and associates, and the Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum, in order to protect and preserve the intrinsic values of the reserve and enhance opportunities for these groups to be involved in the management of the reserve.
2. To work with adjacent communities, tangata whenua and other stakeholders, including the Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum, to manage the reserve, the adjacent national park and coastal waters adjacent to the reserve in an integrated manner.

## **9.1 Methods**

1. *Meet with tangata whenua, local communities, associates and key stakeholders, including the Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Forum, on a regular basis with regard to the implementation of this management plan and issues of common concern.*
2. *Maintain liaison and good working relationships with neighbouring landowners regarding issues of common concern.*
3. *Work with neighbouring communities, tangata whenua and other associates on pest control and ecological restoration projects where practicable.*
4. *Development on private lands and settlements adjacent to the reserve should be of a type and scale that complements the outcomes and objectives of this management plan.*
5. *Seek to have the unformed legal road adjoining the reserve, as shown on Map 5 (page 101), resumed or stopped and have it re-classified as scenic reserve or national park.*
6. *Seek to re-classify the areas of unalienated Crown land, as shown on Maps 3, 4 and 5 (pages 99, 100 and 101), as scenic reserve or national park.*
7. *Seek to have the foreshore in front of the Abel Tasman memorial added to the reserve, as shown on Map 6 (page 102).*
8. *Advocate to the Civil Aviation Authority for the minimum flight level above the reserve to be raised.*
9. *Work with aircraft operators to develop operational guidelines for over-flying the reserve, consistent with those developed for the adjacent national park.*
10. *Any new water ski lanes in the reserve should only be for the purpose of moving an existing water ski lane to a more appropriate location.*
11. *The water ski lanes in the reserve should be actively managed.*
12. *Activities on coastal waters should be managed to avoid any adverse effects on the values of the reserve or land-based activities.*
13. *All maritime regulations relating to the coastal waters adjacent to the reserve, as well as the prohibitions on the discharge of sewage and other waste from vessels within the reserve, should be actively enforced.*
14. *Seek to achieve integrated management of activities on the coastal waters adjacent to the reserve.*
15. *Support provisions in the Tasman Resource Management Plan that protect the intrinsic values of the reserve and adjacent coastal area.*
16. *New water-based commercial operations on coastal waters adjacent to the reserve that are likely to adversely affect the intrinsic values of the reserve should not be allowed.*
17. *New moorings adjacent to the reserve should not be allowed (other than in accordance with policy 21.2.3.18 of the Tasman Resource Management Plan).*

# 10. Implementation, monitoring, reporting, and review

---

## 10.1 Plan implementation, monitoring, reporting and review

### 10.1.1 Implementation

One of the main purposes of this management plan is to provide guidance to the Administration Committee as to the management priorities in the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve. The methods set out what actions should be undertaken by the Administration Committee to give effect to the objectives and policies, and to achieve the outcomes sought in this management plan. The Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board will also need to be consulted on matters relevant to the implementation of this management plan (see section 1.2.3 'Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board').

### 10.1.2 Monitoring

Monitoring is an essential component of this management plan. Without monitoring the Administration Committee cannot assess whether the provisions of this management plan are being implemented and whether the objectives and outcomes are being achieved. Therefore, the Administration Committee intends to monitor the following:

- (i) Natural resources (see section 3.1.3 'Survey, monitoring and research')
- (ii) The introduction of new pest species (see section 3.2.3 'Biosecurity')
- (iii) Visitor experiences and the effects of visitor use (see section 6.1.4 'Monitoring')
- (iv) Accommodation and related facilities (see section 7.2.1 'Monitoring')
- (v) Concessions (see sections 8.1.4 'Concession monitoring', 8.2.18 'Monitoring', and 8.3.7 'Monitoring')
- (vi) Other authorisations (see section 8.4.3 'Monitoring').

### 10.1.3 Reporting

This management plan establishes outcomes for places that the Administration Committee aims to achieve, depending on resources available and the priorities at the national and local government levels. The Administration Committee will provide annual reports to the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board and Tasman District Council on the implementation of this management plan, and any monitoring undertaken, in accordance with Conservation General Policy 13(f) (see Appendix 9).

### 10.1.4 Review

Section 17H(4)(b) of the Conservation Act 1987 (through section 40B(8) of the Reserves Act 1977) states that this management plan should be reviewed as a whole not later than ten years after the date of its approval by the Management Plan Approval Committee. To provide for improved integrated management of the Abel Tasman's public

conservation lands, in accordance with Conservation General Policy 13(c) (see Appendix 9), this plan will be reviewed as a whole in 2018 (or earlier if necessary) when the Abel Tasman National Park management plan is reviewed as a whole. A Management Plan Approval Committee would be reestablished to hear submissions and approve the reviewed plan.

To keep up with increased knowledge and changing circumstances this management plan may be reviewed or amended in part. This may occur due to the significant issues associated with the management of the Abel Tasman coast. Major amendments will require a full public consultation process, in accordance with section 40B(8) of the Reserves Act 1977, section 17I(3) of the Conservation Act 1987, and Conservation General Policy 13(g) (see Appendix 9). A Management Plan Approval Committee would need to be re-established to hear submissions and approve the amended plan.

'Minor' amendments do not need to go through a full public consultation process and only require the approval of the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board (under section 40B(8) of the Reserves Act 1977 and section 17I(4) of the Conservation Act 1987). A 'minor' amendment is where it:

- (i) Does not materially affect the objectives or policies in this management plan or the public interest in the reserve;
- (ii) Corrects a factual error;
- (iii) Updates information on the reserve;
- (iv) Changes the names or classification of places following reclassification in accordance with the relevant legislation;
- (v) Reflects changes in legislation;
- (vi) Provides clarification of an objective or policy; or
- (vii) Deletes reference to a management plan that has been revoked.

## **10.2 Compliance and law enforcement**

In order for the reserve to receive the level of protection accorded to it under the Reserves Act 1977, the Administration Committee seeks to discourage offences through information and education. Should an offence occur it can be pursued through law enforcement. Warranted officers of Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation are responsible for dealing with offences in the reserve.

## **10.3 Helicopter, vehicle and vessel use**

Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation use helicopters, vehicles and motorised vessels (including barges) for management purposes in the reserve, in the adjacent national park and on the adjacent coastal waters. The noise and visual appearance from helicopter over-flight, vehicles and vessels can have adverse effects on the experiences of some visitors. In order to minimise effects management activities requiring vehicles, large vessels or helicopter support should, where practicable, be carried out at times of the day or year when visitors are least likely to be disturbed by the noise and visual effects. However, motorised vessel use is needed at all times of the year, particularly in the summer months, to carry out visitor support, facility maintenance, and safety and enforcement activities.

## **10 Policies**

1. To administer the reserve in accordance with the Reserves Act 1977, any other relevant legislation, the Conservation General Policy 2005, the Conservation Management Strategy, and this management plan.
2. To implement this management plan through the annual business planning for the Administration Committee, Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation, and maintain the integrity of the plan through implementation reporting, review and amendment where necessary.

## **10 Methods**

1. *Manage the reserve in accordance with relevant legislation, General Policies, and this management plan.*
2. *Ensure that the Administration Committee's annual business planning for the reserve reflects the priorities set out in this management plan.*
3. *Monitor the effectiveness of the implementation of this plan in achieving the objectives and outcomes sought.*
4. *Report to the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board on the implementation of this plan on an annual basis.*
5. *Review or amend this management plan where changes in circumstance or legislation, or new knowledge cause the provisions in the plan to become contrary to legislation, outdated, irrelevant, or inconsistent with provisions in the Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan.*
6. *Undertake a full review of this management plan within ten years of the date of approval.*
7. *Carry out compliance and law enforcement activities in the reserve in accordance with the Reserves Act 1977, other relevant legislation, and any bylaws or general authorisations.*
8. *Seek to minimise the effects of helicopter, vehicle and vessel use associated with management activities in the reserve, on visitors, where practicable.*

## Part B

# The Places within Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve

The status of the land adjoining the reserve directly affects a number of matters that require different management approaches. This is the primary basis on which the reserve has been divided into two places (see Maps 7, 7A, 7B and 7C, pages 110 and 111):

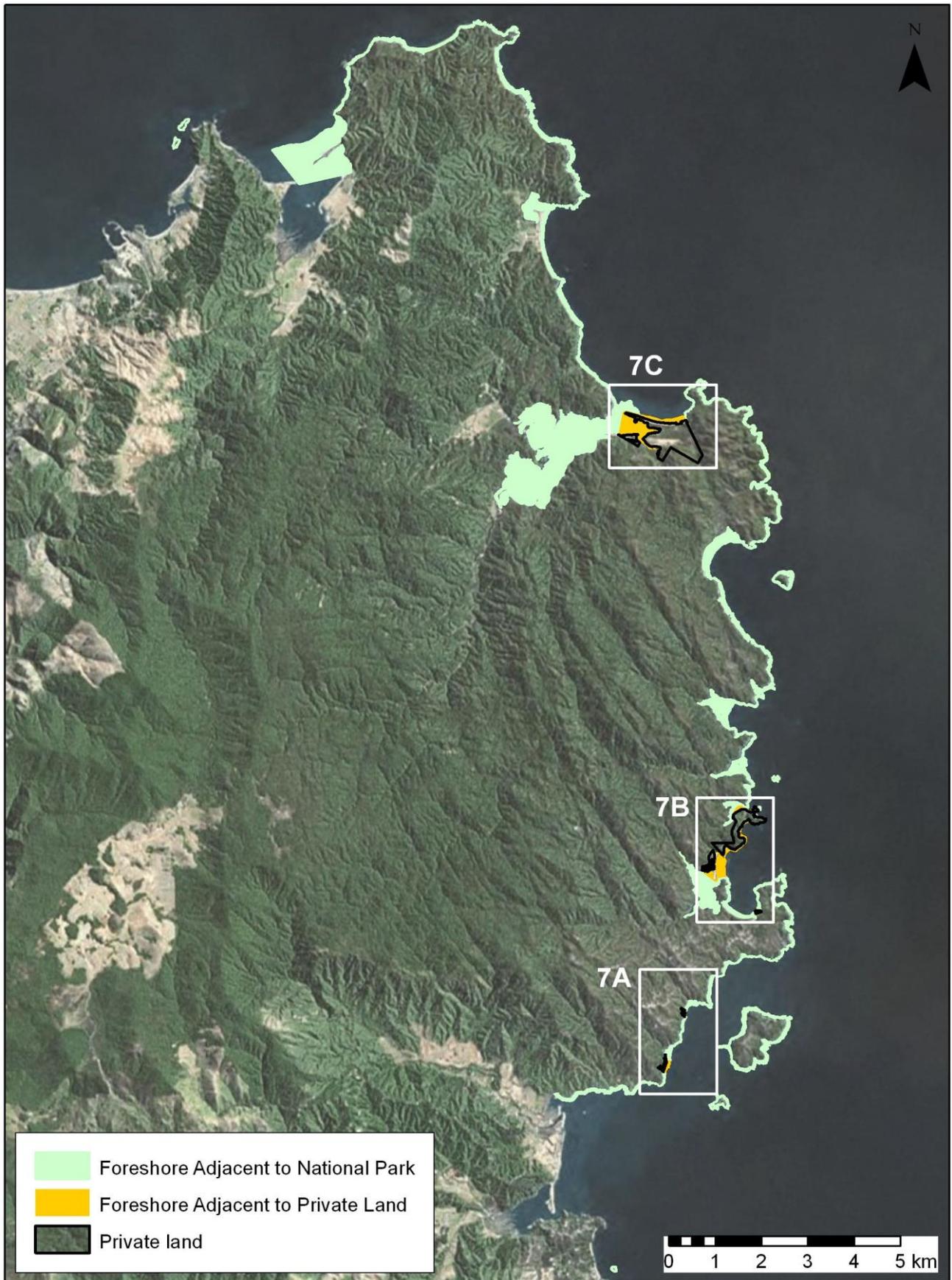
- (i) Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land
- (ii) Foreshore Adjacent to National Park.

These two places, which are described in Chapters 11 and 12, have many characteristics that are common to both (as covered in Chapters 3 - 10), but there are also some distinctive differences, mainly in terms of accessibility and usage, that require different management approaches. Where there are management issues specific to one of these places, they are addressed below (otherwise, refer to Chapters 3 - 10).

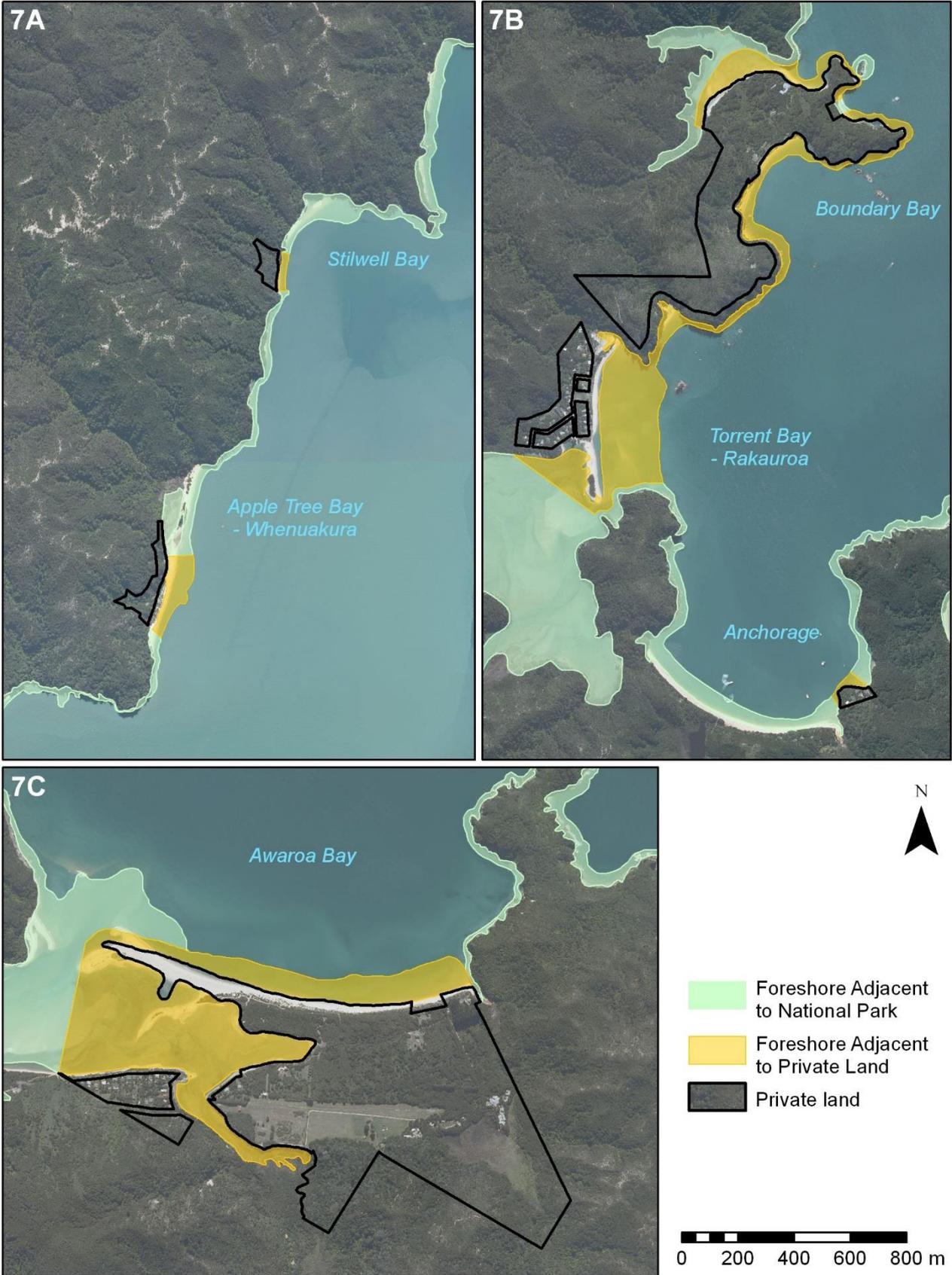
For most visitors to the reserve there is no obvious 'line in the sand' between these two places, other than some uses occurring on the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land that don't occur on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park. The Administration Committee should strive to provide integrated management across the two places.

Note: the Recreational Zones (as set out in section 6.1.3 'Recreational Zones') overlay the two places, and are a separate management tool specifically for the control of visitors and concession activities.

Map 7: Places



Maps 7A, 7B and 7C: Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land detail



# 11. Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land

---

That part of the reserve that comprises Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land reflects the human modified environment on the adjacent land; of private dwellings, commercial accommodation and other buildings that are the result of historical uses, and more recent changes in use. The values of this place incorporate the adjacent built environment, with associated human activities, including commercial activities; but it still possesses the qualities of beauty, memorability and attachment, particularly for the generations of families who have owned and visited the land along the Abel Tasman coastline, sometimes for over 100 years.

## 11.1 Spatial definition of Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land

For the purposes of this management plan, Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land is defined as those areas of the reserve adjacent to privately owned land (and other areas of varying land status) as identified below (see Maps 7, 7A, 7B and 7C, pages 110 and 111):

- (i) Southern end of Apple Tree Bay/Whenuakura (Note: there is accreted land and a thin strip of national park land between the private land and the reserve).
- (ii) Southern end of Stilwell Bay (Note: there is accreted land and a thin strip of national park land between the private land and the reserve).
- (iii) Eastern end of Anchorage (Note: there is an esplanade reserve (administered by the Tasman District Council) between the private land and the reserve).
- (iv) Torrent Bay/Rakauroa settlement to Frenchman Bay/Potikitawa - from the small headland adjacent to the waterworks reserve (administered by the Tasman District Council) adjoining the estuary at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa to the northwestern-most point of the private property at Frenchman Bay/Potikitawa. This includes parts of the reserve that are adjacent to the recreation reserve (administered by the Tasman District Council) and the local purpose reserve–landing (administered by the Department of Conservation) within the estuary, and the public reserve land (administered by the Tasman District Council) in the middle of Torrent Bay/Rakauroa settlement, and the area of the waterworks reserve at the northern end of Torrent Bay/Rakauroa (administered by Tasman District Council); it does not include the small area of national park to the west of North Head. (Note: there is accreted land and legal road in several places between the private land and the reserve)
- (v) Awaroa Bay and Inlet settlement – from the eastern end of Awaroa Bay around the spit and the northeastern part of the inlet (including the esplanade reserves administered by the Tasman District Council).

## 11.2 Outcome for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land

Settlement patterns and human activity within the adjacent landscape reflect the rich history of human occupation and use along the coastline. Residents have a strong affinity for this place and treasure it as a source of relaxation, enjoyment, recreation, inspiration and sustenance. Many locals have long standing personal attachments to the foreshore and the experiences they enjoyed as a child are passed on to their children and grandchildren. The reserve is a social gathering place for the local

communities. There is safe access across the foreshore without degrading the dynamic, natural landscape features or ecosystems or compromising the reasonable opportunity for everyone to use and enjoy the reserve. Residents take pride in sharing the natural and cultural heritage values of the coastline with those who wish to visit and experience this place. Natural processes causing changes to the reserve are well understood and community-led responses seek to protect and restore natural defences. Projects to conserve, understand and enjoy the reserve foster community spirit and enhance a sense of connection between people and nature. Good communication, consultation and partnerships occur. Recreational boating, swimming and fishing activities are evident. New developments on adjacent private land are sensitively located, scaled, designed and landscaped, and complement the scenic values of the reserve. There is ongoing investment in sustainable land-based visitor service businesses.

### **11.3 Long-term objectives for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land**

In addition to the Primary Objectives for the reserve as a whole, the long-term objectives for the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land are:

1. Provision for private land owners to continue to use the reserve to access their properties.
2. Provision of a range of recreational experiences for visitors to the reserve, that has regard to the use of the adjoining private land, while allowing for appreciation of the natural scenery, the enjoyment of nature and natural quiet, and a sense of history.

### **11.4 Conservation of natural resources**

#### **11.4.1 Protection**

The end of Awaroa spit is an important bird nesting and roosting site. Therefore, use of the reserve adjacent to this site should be managed to ensure that the birds are not disturbed. This includes prohibiting dogs (see section 11.5.5 'Dogs') and vehicles (see section 11.5.3 'Land vehicles') from the area, and the use of information and temporary fencing if necessary (see sections 6.1.1 'Access and use').

#### **11.4.2 Pest management**

The Torrent Bay/Rakauroa community, Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation are currently working together, carrying out integrated pest control for possums, stoats and weeds on private land in Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and in the adjoining national park from Stilwell Bay through to Frenchman Bay/Potikitawa. This pest control will have a flow on effect for the reserve and the partnership should continue to be supported and encouraged. A similar pest control operation involving the community at Awaroa should be set up, particularly for the end of Awaroa spit where birds roost and nest.

In addition, information should be provided to private land owners advising them of the plants and animals that could become pests in the reserve, and how to avoid any new pests being introduced. This could occur from the private land directly, or from vehicles or vessels that travel across the reserve to the private land.

#### **11.4 Policies**

1. To protect areas with significant natural values from disturbance.
2. To encourage and support private land owners to carry out pest control.

#### **11.4 Methods**

1. *Protect the bird nesting and roosting area at the end of Awaroa spit.*
2. *Provide information to, and work with, private landowners to control existing pests and avoid the introduction of new pests.*

### **11.5 People's benefit and enjoyment**

Owners of private land adjacent to the reserve, and their visitors, need to be able to access the properties at all times. This means that freedom of entry and access for people across the reserve from the sea, by commercial or private vessels, for the specific purpose of getting to private land, should be preserved. In exceptional circumstances, the Administration Committee may apply some restrictions (in accordance with section 19(2)(b) of the Reserves Act 1977). For example, the Administration Committee may need to close a particular area on a temporary basis to protect a natural, cultural or historic feature or value. Where possible some alternative form of access to private land should be provided for in these circumstances.

Other visitors to the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land, who are not associated with the adjacent private land, may access this part of the reserve by coming in from the sea on a private vessel, or they may be able to walk in from the Abel Tasman National Park. Some portions of this place will be accessible using commercial vessels (see sections 11.5.2 'Recreational Zones' and 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions').

#### **11.5.1 Visitor experiences**

Visitors to the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land include the owners of adjacent private land, and their guests, as well as other people who are on the reserve because they are travelling to or from the Abel Tasman National Park or they are just enjoying the beach environment at these locations. They can be locals, New Zealanders from other parts of the country, or international visitors. Some visitors, such as extended family groups, may be staying overnight on the adjacent private land for long periods of time, while others may just be there for a day or shorter periods of time.

Regardless of the visitors' characteristics they should be able to experience the natural and scenic beauty of the reserve in a safe and relatively quiet environment, with minimal visitor facilities, and free from intrusive commercial activities like vending or hawking. However, visitors can expect to meet other people staying or passing through, particularly in the summer months, and see commercial and private vessels landing on the reserve.

## 11.5.2 Recreational Zones

(see also section 6.1.3 'Recreational Zones' and Map 2, page 47)

The Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land has two Recreational Zones within it: Coastal Access Points and South Coast. Management within these Recreational Zones is linked to accessibility, commercial activities and location on the Abel Tasman coastline. Historically, access to this part of the foreshore has not been subject to controls other than rules and bylaws administered by the Tasman District Council (see Appendix 2). This plan sets out some conditions of access while still providing for the needs of private landowners and their guests.

### 11.5.2.1 *Coastal Access Points*

There are Coastal Access Points on the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land, at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and Awaroa Beach<sup>17</sup> (see Maps 2B & 2E, pages 51 & 54). The Torrent Bay/Rakauroa Coastal Access Points are constrained by the water skiing area (administered by Tasman District Council), which is in the centre of the beach. The southern Coastal Access Point provides mid-high tide access to the beach, close to a toilet and shelter located on the north-eastern edge of the Torrent Bay estuary (on land administered by the Department of Conservation). The northern Coastal Access Point provides mid-low tide access, with a preference for commercial vessels to approach and leave this access point from the southern side of Balloon Rock. Restrictions on the commercial use of Torrent Bay/Rakauroa are set out in section 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions'.

The Awaroa Beach Coastal Access Point provides all-tide access to Awaroa Lodge, and, with the permission of the owners of the Lodge, access across this private land to the Coast Track in the national park. Visitors picked up from the beach have often come from the Lodge, plus there is a public toilet on the adjacent land near the access point, so toileting is not an issue. There is a need to ensure that visitors do not enter any other private land, as there is no formal access across any of the properties. Signs should be erected to provide the necessary information that the public cannot cross the private land to access the national park, except via the Awaroa Lodge.

Other specific characteristics of the Torrent Bay/Rakauroa and Awaroa Beach Coastal Access Points are:

- (i) Vehicles (e.g. all-terrain vehicles) being used to transport goods and equipment from vessels to the adjacent private land, or vehicles (e.g. tractors) being used to haul up private vessels
- (ii) Dogs being exercised.

### 11.5.2.2 *South Coast*

Other than the Coastal Access Points all other areas of Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land are in the South Coast. These are at: Apple Tree Bay/Whenuakura (south); Stilwell Bay; The Anchorage; the remainder of Torrent Bay/Rakauroa settlement, and northwards along the coast through Boundary Bay to Frenchman Bay/Potikitawa; and, the remainder of Awaroa Bay settlement.

---

<sup>17</sup> The Sawpit Point Coastal Access Point is within the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park (see section 12.5.3.1 'Coastal Access Points').

Commercial vessels can drop off and pick up the owners of adjacent private land, and their guests, but other commercial vessel operations are strictly controlled (see section 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions').

Other specific characteristics of the South Coast in this place are:

- (i) Vehicles (e.g. all-terrain vehicles) being used to transport goods and equipment from vessels to the adjacent private land, or vehicles (e.g. tractors) being used to haul up private vessels
- (ii) Dogs being exercised.

### 11.5.3 Land vehicles

Vehicles facilitate the transportation of people, their luggage and goods from vessels to the adjoining private land (and vice versa). However, such use is subject to the bylaws that do not permit any nuisance, disturbance, danger or damage to other people, indigenous flora and fauna, and natural landforms. The use of vehicles, such as all-terrain vehicles, tractors and boat trailers, should continue to be allowed within the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land, except for the western end of Awaroa spit (beyond the vegetated area), as it is a bird roosting and nesting site (see Map 8, page 117). The Administration Committee proposes a new bylaw which would prohibit vehicles on the western end of Awaroa spit.

The use of amphibious craft on the land, including private seaplanes and hovercraft, should be monitored and if adverse effects (such as noise or damage to the reserve) are found to be occurring then their use may be restricted to the two Coastal Access Points within this place.

### 11.5.4 Vessels

Vessels are often the only means of access to the adjoining private land. Therefore, the use of private vessels, both motorised and non-motorised, should continue to be allowed within the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land. This includes private seaplanes, and the anchoring of a vessel to the foreshore or hauling a vessel up onto the foreshore. Use of private vessels on the reserve may be subject to restrictions that the Administration Committee may need to apply for exceptional reasons (in accordance with section 19(2)(b) of the Reserves Act 1977).

The landing of most commercial vessels should be limited to the Coastal Access Points, except when providing access for private land owners (see section 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions'). There is one restriction for a small area in Awaroa Inlet, at the mouth of Venture Creek, as shown in Map 9 (page 118). This is a popular swimming area for Awaroa residents, particularly from the first weekend prior to Christmas Day until the first Monday after Waitangi Day. Concession conditions should be put in place to prevent commercial vessels from entering the area for this period of time.

Any vessel use will still be subject to the bylaws that do not permit any nuisance, disturbance, danger or damage to other people, indigenous flora and fauna, and natural landforms.

Map 8: Awaroa Spit bird nesting/roosting area



Map 9: Venture Creek swimming area



### 11.5.5 Dogs

Dogs should continue to be allowed on the reserve within the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land, except for the western end of Awaroa spit (beyond the vegetated area), as it is a bird roosting and nesting site (see Map 8, page 117). However, taking dogs onto the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land will still be subject to the bylaws that do not permit any nuisance or danger to other people or indigenous fauna. This means visiting boat owners as well as local landowners will be able to exercise their dogs on this part of the foreshore. The Administration Committee proposes an amendment to the bylaws which would prohibit dogs on the western end of Awaroa spit.

### 11.5.6 Educational and other large groups

Large groups of people undertaking organised group activities on the foreshore, such as local community organised events (like the New Year's Day events at Awaroa and Torrent Bay/Rakauroa), are appropriate, provided they do not cause a disturbance to other visitors to the reserve or adjacent landowners.

### 11.5.7 Advocacy

Liaison with local landowners should be maintained to manage the effects of their activities and other visitors' use of the foreshore on the values of the reserve, in accordance with the provisions of this plan. Regular meetings would aid the process, and would also be a means of identifying new issues and opportunities as they arise and addressing them in a timely manner.

#### 11.5 Policies

1. To continue to provide for access across the reserve to adjacent private land, subject to any necessary restrictions.
2. To provide a range of visitor experiences by managing activities within the two Recreational Zones consistent with the outcomes sought for Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land.

#### 11.5 Methods

1. *Where there is no other means of access to adjacent private land provide for some form of access across the reserve, subject to any necessary restrictions.*
2. *Manage visitor use of the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land consistent with the characteristics of the two Recreational Zones as set out in Method 2 (section 6.1, page 62), and allow dogs and the use of vehicles.*
3. *Seek a new bylaw which would prohibit vehicles from the western end of Awaroa spit (as shown on Map 8, page 117).*
4. *Seek a new bylaw which would prohibit dogs from the western end of Awaroa spit (as shown on Map 8, page 117).*
5. *Work with local landowners to manage the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land in accordance with the provisions of this plan.*

## 11.6 Facilities and structures

Private facilities and structures within the reserve include a jetty, mooring posts and boat cradles in the estuary at Torrent Bay/Rakauoa, and mooring lines and buoys at other locations (some of which may not be in the reserve). These all appear to be unauthorised structures. Therefore, in conjunction with Tasman District Council, those structures that comply with the relevant provisions of the Tasman Resource Management Plan should be legalised, including the granting of concessions (see section 7.2 'Other facilities and structures'). Any remaining unauthorised structures on the reserve should be removed.

Although road access for the launching of vessels is limited to Totaranui and Awaroa, pressure exists to allow boat ramps and jetties at other sites adjacent to private land so that vessels can be hauled out from the water, at least overnight. Such structures can interfere with natural coastal processes and can be a major intrusion on the natural character of the reserve. Also, Conservation General Policy 10(g) (see Appendix 9) states that new facilities for exclusive private use should not be permitted. For these reasons, any concession application for a new boat ramp or jetty on the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land should not be granted (see section 7.2 'Other facilities and structures').

Any concession application for a new mooring within the reserve should only be approved where it is not for exclusive private use. Each application should be assessed on a case by case basis, taking into account the potential adverse effects of the structures on the coastal environment and the natural character of the reserve (see section 9.1.10 'Moorings and other structures').

Section 11.7.2.1 'Coastal protection works' covers the situation where a structure within the reserve is associated with a coastal protection activity.

### 11.6 Policy

1. To limit the number of private facilities and structures in the reserve to those provided for by the Tasman Resource Management Plan.

### 11.6 Methods

1. *Ensure that the existing jetty, mooring posts and boat cradles at Torrent Bay/Rakauoa, and any other mooring lines and buoys within the reserve, are legalised by 30 June 2014, in terms of both the Tasman Resource Management Plan and this plan, and remove those that do not comply.*
2. *New boat ramps or jetties in the reserve should not be allowed.*
3. *The exclusive private use of a new mooring should not be allowed.*

## 11.7 Activities requiring specific authorisation

### 11.7.1 Recreation concessions

In addition to the general conditions set out in section 8.2 'Recreation concessions' for different recreation concession activities, Table 5 identifies more specific conditions that should be attached to any concession that may be granted for these activities on the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land within the two Recreational Zones.

**TABLE 5**  
**Conditions for recreation concession activities on the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land**

Recreational Zone	Location	Activity type	Conditions
Coastal Access Points	Torrent Bay/ Rakauroa	Water-based commercially guided trips	(i) Landings between 9am and 12pm (midday). (ii) Passive activities such as interpretation and meal breaks. (iii) No starting or finishing a trip. (iv) No briefings, games, training or induction of groups. (v) Conditions (i), (iii) and (iv) do not apply where the activity is carried out by a local landowner who has a resource consent (issued by Tasman District Council) for an associated commercial activity on private land at Torrent Bay.
		Water taxi*	(i) Drop off /pick up 'Private Landowners' and goods at any time. (ii) Drop off 'Public Visitors' and goods between 9am and 12pm (midday). (iii) Maximum of 300 person movements ('Public Visitors') per day (combined total for all concessionaires). (iv) Landings within one of the two designated Coastal Access Points (as shown on Map 2B, page 51).
		Charter boat	(i) Vessels capable of accommodating no more than 10 charter clients overnight - drop off /pick up no more than 10 charter clients, who are overnighing on the vessel, at any time. (ii) Vessels that meet the criterion in condition (i) - landings within one of the two designated Coastal Access Points (as shown on Map 2B, page 51). (iii) Vessels that do not meet the criterion in condition (i) – no landings.
		Drop off/retrieval of hire equipment	(i) By a local landowner who has a resource consent (issued by Tasman District Council) for an associated commercial activity on private land at Torrent Bay only. (ii) Landings within the two designated Coastal Access Points (as shown on Map 2B, page 51).
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support vessel</li> <li>• Servicing floating accommodation</li> <li>• Cruise ships</li> </ul>	(i) No landings.
	Awaroa Beach	Water-based commercially guided trips	(i) Starting or finishing a trip. (ii) Briefings, games, training and induction of groups. (iii) Passive activities such as interpretation and meal breaks.

\*Refer to section 8.2.3 'Water taxi activity' for information on water taxi passenger and non-motorised watercraft types

**TABLE 5 (continued)**

Recreational Zone	Location	Activity type	Conditions
Coastal Access Points	Awaroa Beach	Water taxi*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up 'Private Landowners' and goods at any time.</li> <li>(ii) Drop off /pick up 'Public Visitors', 'Guided non-motorised watercraft', 'Freedom/Private non-motorised watercraft' and goods between 7am and 6pm.</li> <li>(iii) Maximum of 500 person movements ('Public Visitors') (combined total for all concessionaires) per day at this site and the Sawpit Point Coastal Access Point<sup>18</sup> (combined).</li> <li>(iv) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Point (as shown on Map 2E, page 54).</li> </ul>
		Charter boat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up of up to 40 charter clients, at any time.</li> <li>(ii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Point (as shown on Map 2E, page 54).</li> </ul>
		Support vessel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up non-motorised watercraft associated with the support vessel between 7am and 6pm.</li> <li>(ii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Point (as shown on Map 2E, page 54).</li> </ul>
		Servicing floating accommodation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up guests at any time.</li> <li>(ii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Point (as shown on Map 2E, page 54).</li> </ul>
		Cruise ships	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up passengers between 7am and 6pm.</li> <li>(ii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Point (as shown on Map 2E, page 54).</li> </ul>
		Drop off/retrieval of hire equipment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) By authorised water taxi or charter boat concessionaires only.</li> <li>(ii) Drop off/retrieval between 7am and 6pm.</li> <li>(iii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Point (as shown on Map 2E, page 54).</li> <li>(iv) Conditions (i) and (ii) do not apply where the activity is carried out by a local landowner who has a resource consent (issued by Tasman District Council) for an associated commercial activity on private land at Awaroa.</li> </ul>
South Coast		Water-based commercially guided trips	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Passive activities such as interpretation and meal breaks.</li> <li>(ii) No starting or finishing a trip.</li> <li>(iii) No briefings, games, pre-departure training or induction of groups.</li> <li>(iv) Conditions (ii) and (iii) do not apply where the activity is carried out adjacent to the Awaroa settlement by a local landowner who has a resource consent (issued by Tasman District Council) for an associated commercial activity on private land at Awaroa.</li> <li>(v) No entry into vessel exclusion zone at Venture Creek, Awaroa, from the first weekend prior to Christmas until the first Monday after Waitangi Day (see section 11.5.4 'Vessels').</li> </ul>

\* Refer to section 8.2.3 'Water taxi activity' for information on water taxi passenger and non-motorised watercraft types

<sup>18</sup> See Table 6, section 12.7.1 for other Sawpit Point Coastal Access Point conditions of use.

**TABLE 5 (continued)**

Recreational Zone	Location	Activity type	Conditions
South Coast		Water taxi*	(i) Drop off /pick up 'Private Landowners' and goods at any time. (ii) Landings as close as possible to the landowner's property. (iii) No entry into vessel exclusion zone at Venture Creek, Awaroa, from the first weekend prior to Christmas until the first Monday after Waitangi Day (see section 11.5.4 'Vessels'). (iv) No drop off /pick up of 'Public Visitors', 'Guided non-motorised watercraft', 'Freedom/Private non-motorised watercraft' or goods.
		Charter boat	(i) Vessels capable of accommodating no more than 10 charter clients overnight - drop off /pick up of up to 16 charter clients, at any location, at any time. (ii) Vessels that do not meet the criterion set out in condition (i) but have on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks - drop off /pick up of up to 16 charter clients between 7am and 6pm at any location. (iii) Vessels that do not meet the criterion set out in condition (i) but have on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks – drop off /pick up of up to 16 charter clients at any time and at any location where: the client is the adjacent landowner (or guest); or the prior approval of the Administration Committee has been given. (iv) Vessels that do not meet the criterion set out in condition (i) and do not have onboard toilets and sewage holding tanks - drop off /pick up of up to 16 charter clients at any time where: the client is the adjacent landowner (or guest); or the prior approval of the Administration Committee has been given. (v) No entry into vessel exclusion zone at Venture Creek, Awaroa, from the first weekend prior to Christmas until the first Monday after Waitangi Day (see section 11.5.4 'Vessels').
		Drop off/retrieval of hire equipment	(i) By a local landowner who has a resource consent (issued by Tasman District Council) for an associated commercial activity on private land at Torrent Bay or Awaroa only. (ii) Landings as close as possible to the landowner's property. (iii) No entry into vessel exclusion zone at Venture Creek, Awaroa, from the first weekend prior to Christmas until the first Monday after Waitangi Day (see section 11.5.4 'Vessels').
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support vessel</li> <li>• Servicing floating accommodation</li> <li>• Cruise ships</li> </ul>	(i) No landings.

\* Refer to section 8.2.3 'Water taxi activity' for information on water taxi passenger and non-motorised watercraft types

(see also Appendix 8 for a summary of charter boat activity)

## 11.7.2 Non-recreation concessions

### 11.7.2.1 *Coastal protection works*

Coastal protection works (such as beach re-nourishment), that are within the reserve, require authorisation where the activity:

- (a) Is not being carried out by (or on behalf of) the Administration Committee for the purposes of managing the reserve, in accordance with section 55 of the Reserves Act 1977; and/or
- (b) Involves the erection of a structure or associated facility.

This authorisation is in addition to any coastal permit, resource consent or building consent required from the Tasman District Council. The criteria set out in Method 2 (page 125) should be taken into account when considering an application to carry out coastal protection works.

In circumstances where, to reduce the risk of coastal erosion on the adjacent land, Tasman District Council makes an application to carry out such an activity on behalf of private landowners, the delegated authority from the Minister of Conservation to the Administration Committee to grant concessions under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987 should be withdrawn. The Conservator of the Nelson Marlborough Conservancy of the Department of Conservation will be responsible for making a decision as the Minister's delegate.

Where any beach re-nourishment is carried out by the Administration Committee for management purposes, such as protecting and preserving the reserve for the benefit and enjoyment of the public, the authority to do so has been delegated by the Minister of Conservation.

### 11.7.2.2 *Barging*

Due to the coastal location and other physical constraints, many private landowners adjacent to the reserve can only access their properties from the sea. This means that many activities associated with building or maintaining structures or facilities on their property has to occur by bringing materials in or removing waste on commercial vessels, including barges. Applications for this type of activity may be granted except where the barge itself or the movement of large, heavy vehicles across the reserve is likely to cause significant adverse effects. Further conditions of use are set out in Method 4 (page 125).

### 11.7.2.3 *Aircraft*

The Administration Committee may grant concessions to adjacent private landowners (and their guests) to land aircraft on, or take off from, the reserve, where those guests are not clients of a commercial operation, subject to the criteria set out in Method 5 (page 125).

#### **11.7 Policies**

1. To provide for recreation concessions on the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land that do not adversely affect the values of the reserve.
2. To manage coastal protection works in a manner that is consistent with the relevant legislation and delegations from the Minister of Conservation.

## **11.7 Methods**

1. *All recreation concessions on Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land should be in accordance with the conditions set out in Table 5.*
2. *Coastal protection works may be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
  - (a) *The potential adverse effects on the natural values of the reserve, including natural coastal processes, natural landforms and visual effects can be minimised*
  - (b) *There is no need for on-going maintenance of a physical structure.*
3. *Where the applicant for coastal protection works is the Tasman District Council, the Department of Conservation will be solely responsible for making a decision on the concession.*
4. *The commercial delivery and/or removal of materials, equipment, vehicles or waste across the reserve may be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
  - (a) *Where the activity is carried out by a water taxi, it is in accordance with the relevant conditions of use set out in this plan for water taxi activity (see sections 8.2 'Recreation concessions', and 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions')*
  - (b) *Adverse effects on the values of the reserve can be minimised*
  - (c) *Where the activity is carried out by a barge, conditions may be imposed as to the time of the year that the barge can enter the reserve; the period of a tidal cycle that the barge can be in the reserve; how long the barge may remain in the reserve; and/or other conditions necessary to avoid or minimise adverse effects on the reserve, including potential discharges from the barge or its cargo.*
5. *Aircraft landings on, or take-offs from, the reserve by adjacent private landowners (and their guests) may be allowed in accordance with the following criteria:*
  - (a) *The landing/take-off is for private access purposes and guests are not clients of a commercial operation*
  - (b) *The landing/take-off occurs adjacent to their property*
  - (c) *No landing/take-off occurs at the western end of Awaroa spit (see Map 8, page 117)*
  - (d) *Conditions, such as restrictions on the timing and frequency of landings/ take-offs, may be imposed to minimise adverse effects on visitors, other private landowners, public and private facilities and property, and the values of the reserve.*

## 12 Foreshore Adjacent to National Park

---

The coastline of the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park is the essence of the Abel Tasman attraction: uncluttered, natural, very beautiful and dramatic. The values of this place include outstanding qualities of memorability, coherence, beauty, inspiration and attachment.

### 12.1 Spatial definition of Foreshore Adjacent to National Park

For the purposes of this management plan, Foreshore Adjacent to National Park is defined as those areas of the reserve (see Maps 7, 7A, 7B and 7C, pages 110 and 111):

- (i) Immediately adjacent to the Abel Tasman National Park (including the islands and accreted land) and other public land (e.g. part of the Tasman District Council administered waterworks reserve at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa); and
- (ii) Adjacent to legal road (and accreted land) that directly adjoins the Abel Tasman National Park<sup>19</sup> and other public conservation land (e.g. the scenic reserve at Frenchman Bay/Potikitawa); and
- (iii) Excluding the areas identified as Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land.

### 12.2 Outcome for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park

A sense of seclusion is maintained within a naturally functioning, unspoiled coastline, where the landscape is a product of the underlying geology and natural processes. The peace, tranquillity and intimacy of small bays and estuaries backed by bush clad land dominate. A diversity of wildlife and habitats is flourishing and the interconnections are better understood. The coast is host to populations of nationally and internationally important bird species. 'Threatened' and 'at risk' species and habitats are well managed and their range is increasing. Tangata whenua are involved in the protection of their historical and cultural taonga and ongoing relationships are maintained. Information about the natural and cultural heritage of the coast is widely and readily available. There are minimal built structures and no visible evidence of commercial facilities. A variety of activities, respectful of the environment, take place without disturbance to wildlife and other people. The quality of the natural environment is a fundamental part of each visitor's experience, ranging from relatively busy to quiet areas. Independent access and a range of commercially provided modes of access at defined points, from both the sea and the land, allow visitors from all over the world to safely enjoy the reserve. Visitor numbers and the activities they undertake are positively managed in accordance with Recreational Zones. This is integrated with management of the adjacent national park and ensures that there are few detrimental impacts on natural values. The seal colonies on Tonga and Pinnacle islands are thriving.

### 12.3 Long-term objective for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park

In addition to the Primary Objectives for the reserve as a whole, the long-term objective for the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park is:

1. Provision of a range of recreational experiences for visitors to the reserve, primarily involving the appreciation of the natural scenery, the enjoyment of nature and natural quiet, and a sense of history.

---

<sup>19</sup> This includes the reserve in front of a private bach located on unformed legal road at Stilwell Bay.

## 12.4 Conservation of natural resources

### 12.4.1 Protection, restoration and preservation

The Department of Conservation is actively managing populations of the 'threatened' ('nationally critical') coastal peppergrass (*Lepidium banksii*), found between Totaranui headland and Anapai, through fertilising and spraying for aphids and white cabbage butterfly infestations. The Department of Conservation is also transplanting coastal peppergrass to supplement existing populations, as well as creating new ones, such as on the islands.

The low sand dunes on the landward edges of the reserve are subject to natural erosion and accretion and are threatened by introduced plant species like gorse, marram and ice plant. The Department of Conservation is restoring the dunes in specific areas (such as Mutton Cove) using weed control and active planting of indigenous sand-binding plants such as pingao and spinifex. Large scale dune restoration is impractical, given the dynamic nature of coastal processes and the aggressiveness of gorse as a pioneer species. Some estuarine areas, such as Totaranui, may also benefit from restoration projects.

### 12.4.2 Seals

Tonga Island Marine Reserve, which surrounds Tonga Island and overlaps the foreshore reserve on the island and mainland, is home to the second largest of the three New Zealand fur seal breeding colonies in the top of the South Island. Seals are also beginning to breed on Pinnacle Island. Seal rookeries are highly sensitive to human intrusion and the delicate mother-pup bond can be broken when animals are disturbed, causing the mother to abandon her young. If the colony is disturbed, stampedes may kill pups.

There are also serious safety issues for people, as bulls are very aggressive during the mating season and will chase and attack those who venture too close. There have been problems with people landing on Tonga Island and entering the breeding colony, causing disturbance. Because of this, the Department of Conservation has commenced the process to designate Tonga Island and Pinnacle Island (national park land) as Specially Protected Areas (under section 12 of the National Parks Act 1980). This will result in the islands being closed to public access, to protect the breeding colonies. To ensure consistency of management across the reserve and the national park the Administration Committee intends to close the equivalent areas of the foreshore to public access, and proposes appropriate new bylaws, in accordance with sections 19(2)(b), 106(1)(a) and 106(1)(c) of the Reserves Act 1977.

Because seal numbers are increasing along the Abel Tasman coastline, further haulout sites and rookeries are likely to establish on the reserve in the next decade. Some of these sites may also require protection in the future. This may be achieved by information, including signage, advising visitors of appropriate behaviour around seals, such as separation distances, or by the restriction of public access by the mechanisms identified above.

Existing marine mammal watching permits (issued under the Marine Mammals Protection Regulations 1992), issued for seal swimming and guided viewing, should be unaffected by the reserve closure, as they are for activities on the coastal waters (outside the reserve).

### 12.4.3 Island biosecurity and threat management

Tonga, Pinnacle, Adele/Motuarero-nui and Fisherman/Motuarero-iti islands are free of mammalian pests and are managed to maintain this status. The Administration Committee wishes to prevent pests, such as mice, rats and stoats, being reintroduced to these islands by visitors to the reserve. Therefore, visitors need to be well-informed regarding the risks pests pose to indigenous flora and fauna on the islands and the steps that they can take to prevent pests being re-introduced. This can be addressed in part by closure of the reserve to public access on Tonga and Pinnacle islands, as covered in section 12.4.2 'Seals' above.

#### 12.4 Policies

1. To ensure no 'threatened' species are lost from the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park.
2. To protect seal breeding colonies from disturbance.
3. To prevent mammalian pests reinvading Tonga, Pinnacle, Adele/ Motuarero-nui and Fisherman/Motuarero-iti islands.

#### 12.4 Methods

1. *Actively manage the 'threatened' ('nationally critical') coastal peppercress populations.*
2. *Carry out ecological restoration in specific dune and estuary areas, in conjunction with pest control.*
3. *Close the reserve to public access on Tonga and Pinnacle islands to protect the seal breeding colonies and seek appropriate new bylaws which would prohibit general public access.*
4. *Provide information to visitors on the need to prevent mammalian pests from reinvading Tonga, Pinnacle, Adele/Motuarero-nui and Fisherman/Motuarero-iti islands.*

## 12.5 People's benefit and enjoyment

### 12.5.1 Access

The Foreshore Adjacent to National Park is easily accessible from the sea and the land. Visitors may arrive on a private vessel, a freedom kayak rental, bareboat charter, or commercial vessel, or they may walk in from the Abel Tasman National Park, and in a few locations the reserve can be accessed from a road.

### 12.5.2 Visitor experiences

A wide variety of people visit the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park. These visitors include international travellers and New Zealanders. They may be the owners of nearby private land and their guests, or other individuals or groups who are on the reserve because they are travelling to or from the Abel Tasman National Park or they are just

enjoying the beach environment of this reserve. Some visitors may arrive on foot, others may arrive by sea, they may be staying overnight in huts and campsites in the national park or in private accommodation on nearby private land, while others may just be there for all or part of a day.

Regardless of the visitors' characteristics they should be able to experience the natural and scenic beauty of the reserve in a safe and relatively quiet environment, particularly north of Totaranui, with minimal visitor facilities, and free from intrusive commercial activities like vending or hawking. However, visitors can expect to meet other people staying or passing through, particularly in the summer months, and see commercial vessels picking up or dropping off people from Totaranui south to Marahau.

### **12.5.3 Recreational Zones**

The Foreshore Adjacent to National Park has four Recreational Zones: Coastal Access Points; Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor; South Coast; and North Coast (see Map 2, page 47). In addition to the information in section 6.1.3 'Recreational Zones', further details are provided below for the Coastal Access Points and the South Coast.

Management within these zones is linked to accessibility, commercial activities and location on the Abel Tasman coastline. Historically, access to the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park has not been subject to controls other than rules and bylaws administered by Tasman District Council (see Appendix 2). This plan introduces conditions on access to provide for integrated conservation management with the adjacent national park, in accordance with Conservation General Policy 13(c) (see Appendix 9).

#### **12.5.3.1 Coastal Access Points**

There are six Coastal Access Points on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park at: Totaranui, Sawpit Point (Awaroa Inlet), Onetahuti, Bark Bay/ Wairima, Medlands Bay and Anchorage (see Maps 2A, 2C – 2F, pages 50, 52-55).

The Totaranui Coastal Access Point is adjacent to the Totaranui Campground, which caters for up to 1200 people per day (850 overnighters), with a range of basic facilities. There is also reasonable road access to the campground, which the Administration Committee and the Department of Conservation has no control over. As a result, at Totaranui, it is likely that there will be relatively high numbers of visitors on the reserve throughout the day during the summer season, particularly when the adjacent campground is full.

The Sawpit Point Coastal Access Point provides mid-high tide access to the Coast Track (and the Awaroa settlement), with facilities available at the nearby Awaroa Hut and Campsite.

The Onetahuti and Bark Bay/Wairima Coastal Access Points are in front of visitor facilities, including toilets, huts and campsites, on the adjacent national park land.

The Anchorage Coastal Access Points are subject to the existing 'Go Slow' 3 knot zone (anchorage area), the 5 knot zone ('access lane') and the water skiing area (all administered by Tasman District Council). The eastern coastal access point allows visitors to be dropped off/picked up at all tides in the vicinity of the toilets and other facilities associated with the Anchorage Hut and campsite. The western coastal access point allows visitors to be dropped off/picked up near to where the Coast Track accesses the beach.

Other characteristics of these Coastal Access Points are:

- (i) No dogs

- (ii) No vehicles, except at the Totaranui boat ramps (or as provided for in accordance with section 12.5.4 'Land vehicles').

### **12.5.3.2 South Coast**

The South Coast for the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park extends from Marahau in the south to Totaranui in the north, including the islands along this part of the coastline, but excludes:

- (a) All parts of the Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land place
- (b) The Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor and the Coastal Access Points.

Other characteristics of the South Coast in this place include:

- (i) Commercial vessels dropping off/picking up people subject to strict criteria on their operation and group numbers (see section 12.7.1 'Recreation concessions')
- (ii) Water taxis using Tonga Quarry on a trial basis, with large groups of up to 40 people being dropped off/picked up
- (iii) No public access on Tonga and Pinnacle islands
- (iv) No dogs (with one exception at Stilwell Bay, see section 12.5.6 'Dogs').

### **12.5.4 Land vehicles**

General vehicle use is only appropriate in this place within the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor, and on the boat ramps at Totaranui. However, the use of amphibious craft on the land, including private seaplanes and hovercraft, may be appropriate within the Coastal Access Points, provided there is no damage to the reserve and the noise levels do not exceed those of other vehicles and vessels permitted in this Recreational Zone.

All other vehicle use within the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park should be prohibited. The Administration Committee proposes amendments to the bylaws which would regulate vehicle use on the reserve in line with this approach, and to ensure vehicles do not obstruct the two boat ramps.

### **12.5.5 Vessels**

Private vessels (including seaplanes) will continue to be allowed to enter all Recreational Zones within the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park, with the exception of: Tonga and Pinnacle islands (see section 12.4.2 'Seals'). The Administration Committee proposes amendments to the bylaws which would give effect to this exclusion, and to prevent vessels from obstructing the two boat ramps at Totaranui.

Restrictions on the use of commercial vessels within the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park are set out in section 12.7.1 'Recreation concessions'.

### **12.5.6 Dogs**

Dogs should be prohibited on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park as the taking of dogs into these parts of the reserve is inconsistent with the values of both the reserve and the adjacent national park (see section 6.4.2 'Dogs'). There are two exceptions:

- (i) Dogs on a leash being taken across the Awaroa Inlet within the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor (see section 6.1.3.2 'Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor'); and
- (ii) Authorisation may be granted to the owner (as at 8 June 2011) of the bach located on unformed legal road at Stilwell Bay to allow their dog(s) to be on the reserve at this location.

The Administration Committee proposes an amendment to the bylaws which would prohibit dogs on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park (with the above exceptions).

### **12.5 Policies**

1. To allow land and sea access to the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park, with some restrictions.
2. To provide a range of visitor experiences by managing activities within the four Recreational Zones consistent with the outcomes sought for Foreshore Adjacent to National Park.

### **12.5 Methods**

1. *Manage visitor use of the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park consistent with the characteristics of the four Recreational Zones as set out in Method 2 (section 6.1, page 62), and generally prohibit dogs and the use of vehicles.*
2. *Seek an amendment to the bylaws which would prohibit vehicles on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park, except within the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor and on the boat ramps at Totaranui.*
3. *Seek amendments to the bylaws which would prevent vehicles and vessels from obstructing the boat ramps at Totaranui.*
4. *Seek an amendment to the bylaws which would prohibit dogs on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park, except:*
  - (i) *Dogs that are on a leash within the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor*
  - (ii) *Where an authorisation has been granted to the owner (as at 8 June 2011) of the bach on unformed legal road at Stilwell Bay to allow their dog(s) on the reserve at Stilwell Bay.*

## **12.6 Facilities and structures**

The public facilities and structures in this part of the reserve comprise: two boat ramps at Totaranui (one on the main beach and the other in the estuary); access steps/ramps from the Coast Track to the reserve at a number of locations (Mutton Cove, Anapai Bay, Totaranui, Goat Bay, Waiharakeke Bay, Awaroa, Mosquito Bay, Bark Bay/Wairima, Akersten Bay); a small retaining wall at Anchorage; and marker posts in the Awaroa Inlet for the walkers that cross the estuary. These should be maintained to a safe and serviceable standard. The only additional public facilities or structures that may be necessary in the reserve are: signs and posts to mark the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor (see section 6.1.3 'Recreational Zones'); new access steps/ramps; or replacements for existing structures that need to be moved.

To preserve and protect the natural and scenic values of the reserve there should be no new boat ramps, jetties or other similar structures within the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park. Access to the reserve from the water should be on nature's terms.

However, new structures, such as access steps, may be required to maintain safe public access across the reserve.

## 12.6 Policy

1. To limit the number of public facilities and structures to preserve the natural, historical and cultural values of the reserve.

## 12.6 Methods

1. *Maintain the public facilities and structures in the reserve to a safe and serviceable standard.*
2. *Only erect new facilities or structures (excluding boat ramps, jetties or other similar structures) in the reserve for public use where they are essential for access to or across the reserve from the national park and they do not adversely affect the preservation, protection and management of the reserve.*

## 12.7 Activities requiring specific authorisation

### 12.7.1 Recreation concessions

In addition to the general conditions set out in section 8.2 'Recreation concessions' for different recreation concession activities, Table 6 identifies more specific conditions that should be attached to any concession that may be granted for these activities on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park within the four Recreational Zones.

**TABLE 6**  
**Conditions for recreation concession activities on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park**

Recreational Zone	Activity type	Conditions
Coastal Access Points	Water-based commercially guided trips	(i) Starting or finishing a trip, except at: the Medlands Bay Coastal Access Point; or the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point (unless toilet facilities are built on the adjacent national park at this location). (ii) Briefings, games, training and induction of groups. (iii) Passive activities such as interpretation and meal breaks.
	Water taxi*	(i) Drop off /pick up 'Public Visitors', 'Private Landowners', 'Guided non-motorised watercraft', 'Freedom/Private non-motorised watercraft' and goods/hire equipment between 7am and 6pm. (ii) Maximum of 500 person movements ('Public Visitors') (combined total for all concessionaires) per day at: Medlands Bay and Bark Bay/Wairima (combined); Tonga Quarry <sup>20</sup> and Onetahuti (combined); Awaroa Beach <sup>21</sup> and Sawpit Point (combined); and Totaranui. (iii) Maximum of 450 person movements ('Public Visitors') (combined total for all concessionaires) per day at Anchorage.

\* Refer to section 8.2.3 'Water taxi activity' for information on water taxi passenger and non-motorised watercraft types

<sup>20</sup> See South Coast and Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor below for use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis.

<sup>21</sup> See Section 11.7.1, Table 5 for other Awaroa Beach Coastal Access Point conditions of use.

**TABLE 6 (continued)**

Recreational Zone	Activity type	Conditions
Coastal Access Points	Water taxi*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(iv) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Points, except the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point (as shown on Maps 2A, 2C, 2D &amp; 2F, pages 50, 52, 53 &amp; 55). Vessels may land at an alternative location within each particular bay where there is the need to protect the safety of clients in extreme sea conditions.</li> <li>(v) Landings at the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point by vessels with on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks.</li> <li>(vi) No drop off /pick up of people at the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point by vessels without on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks (unless toilet facilities are built on the adjacent national park at this location).</li> </ul>
	Charter boat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up of up to 40 charter clients, at any time.</li> <li>(ii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Points, except the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point (as shown on Maps 2A, 2C, 2D &amp; 2F, pages 50, 52, 53 &amp; 55)</li> <li>(iii) Landings at the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point by vessels with on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks.</li> <li>(iv) No drop off /pick up of charter clients at the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point by vessels without on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks (unless toilet facilities are built on the adjacent national park at this location).</li> <li>(v) No landings at the Medlands Bay Coastal Access Point by vessels capable of accommodating more than 10 charter clients overnight.</li> </ul>
	Support vessel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up non-motorised watercraft associated with the support vessel between 7am and 6pm.</li> <li>(ii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Points except the Medlands Bay Coastal Access Point (as shown on Maps 2A, 2C, 2D &amp; 2F, pages 50, 52, 53 &amp; 55).</li> </ul>
	Servicing floating accommodation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up guests at any time.</li> <li>(ii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Points (as shown on Maps 2A, 2C, 2D &amp; 2F, pages 50, 52, 53 &amp; 55).</li> </ul>
	Cruise ships	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Drop off /pick up guests between 7am and 6pm.</li> <li>(ii) Maximum of 40 guests per day at Sawpit Point or Bark Bay/Wairima.</li> <li>(iii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Points, except the Medlands Bay Coastal Access Point, or the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point (as shown on Maps 2A, 2C, 2D &amp; 2F, pages 50, 52, 53 &amp; 55).</li> <li>(iv) Landings at the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point by vessels with on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks.</li> <li>(v) No drop off /pick up of guests at the western Anchorage Coastal Access Point by vessels without on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks (unless toilet facilities are built on the adjacent national park at this location).</li> </ul>
	Drop off/ retrieval of hire equipment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) By authorised water taxi or charter boat concessionaires only.</li> <li>(ii) Drop off/retrieval between 7am and 6pm.</li> <li>(iii) Landings within the designated Coastal Access Points except the Medlands Bay Coastal Access Point (as shown on Maps 2A, 2C, 2D &amp; 2F, pages 50, 52, 53 &amp; 55).</li> </ul>

\* Refer to section 8.2.3 'Water taxi activity' for information on water taxi passenger and non-motorised watercraft types

**TABLE 6 (continued)**

Recreational Zone	Activity type	Conditions
South Coast and Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor	Water-based commercially guided trips	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Passive activities such as interpretation and meal breaks.</li> <li>(ii) No starting or finishing a trip, except as provided for in condition (iii) below.</li> <li>(iii) Starting or finishing a commercially guided non-motorised watercraft trip at Observation Beach bays.</li> <li>(iv) No games or induction of groups (briefings and pre-departure training may take place at Observation Beach bays for guided parties who have walked, or been transported by water taxi, to this location and will depart via non-motorised watercraft).</li> <li>(v) No landing on any island, except Adele Island/Motuareronui.</li> <li>(vi) No landing at locations where there are no public toilets available on the adjacent national park land unless the operator has portable toilet facilities for all clients.</li> </ul>
	Water taxi*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) No landing within the South Coast except as provided for in conditions (ii) to (vii) below.</li> <li>(ii) Drop off /pick up 'Private Landowners' and goods at any time, provided the vessel lands as close to the bach or property as possible.</li> <li>(iii) Drop off /pick up 'Public Visitors' (walkers only) at Apple Tree Bay/Whenuakura between 7am and 6pm up to a maximum of 200 person movements (combined total for all concessionaires) per day, provided the vessel lands as close to the toilet as possible.</li> <li>(iv) Drop off /pick up at Stilwell Bay and drop off only at Coquille Bay, between 7am and 6pm, of commercially guided walkers associated with one existing operator<sup>22</sup> up to a maximum of 40 times per year.</li> <li>(v) Drop off/pick up 'Public Visitors' undertaking, and non-motorised watercraft used for, water-based commercially guided trips that start or finish at Observation Beach bays, between 9.30am and 4pm.</li> <li>(vi) Pick up non-motorised watercraft from Observation Beach bays for safety reasons (where clients who are part of a commercially guided group are unable to travel any further along the coastline due to weather and sea conditions).</li> <li>(vii) Drop off/pick up 'Public Visitors' at Tonga Quarry<sup>23</sup> between 7am and 6pm up to a maximum of 500 person movements (combined with Onetahuti Coastal Access Point) per day, provided the vessel lands within the designated landing area shown on Map 2D (page 53).</li> <li>(viii) No landing within the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor.</li> </ul>

\* Refer to section 8.2.3 'Water taxi activity' for information on water taxi passenger and non-motorised watercraft types

<sup>22</sup> This condition will only apply until such time as the existing concession holder (as at 8 June 2011) ceases to hold a concession for this activity. This is non-transferable and cannot be sold or operated by anyone other than the existing concession holder.

<sup>23</sup> Use of Tonga Quarry by water taxis is to be trialled for a limited period of time. The end of this trial period will be determined following the full review and approval of this plan (see Section 6.1.3.3).

**TABLE 6 (continued)**

Recreational Zone	Activity type	Conditions
South Coast and Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor	Charter boat	(i) Vessels capable of accommodating no more than 10 charter clients overnight – drop off /pick up of up to 16 charter clients, at any location, at any time. (ii) Vessels that do not meet the criterion set out in condition (i) but have on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks - drop off /pick up of up to 16 charter clients between 7am and 6pm at any location. (iii) Vessels that do not meet the criterion set out in condition (i) but have on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks – drop off /pick up of up to 16 charter clients between 6pm and 7am the following day at any mainland location where there is no campsite on the adjacent national park land. (iv) Vessels that do not meet the criterion set out in condition (i) and do not have on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks - drop off /pick up of up to 16 charter clients between 7am and 6pm at locations where there is a public toilet on the adjacent national park land. (v) No drop off /pick up of charter clients by a vessel without on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks at locations where there is not a public toilet on the adjacent national park land, unless the Administration Committee has given their prior approval.
	Support vessel	(i) No landing within the South Coast except as provided for below. (ii) Drop off/pick up non-motorised watercraft associated with the support vessel used for commercially guided trips that start or finish at Observation Beach bays, between 9.30am and 4pm. (iii) Pick up non-motorised watercraft associated with the support vessel from Observation Beach bays for safety reasons (where clients who are part of a commercially guided group are unable to travel any further along the coastline due to weather and sea conditions). (iv) No landing within the Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Servicing floating accommodation</li> <li>• Cruise ships</li> <li>• Drop off/retrieval of hire equipment</li> </ul>	(i) No landings.
North Coast	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water-based commercially guided trips</li> <li>• Water taxi</li> <li>• Charter boat</li> <li>• Support vessel</li> <li>• Servicing floating accommodation</li> <li>• Cruise ships</li> <li>• Drop off/retrieval of hire equipment</li> </ul>	(i) No landings.

(see also Appendix 8 for a summary of charter boat activity)

**12.7 Policy**

1. To provide for recreation concessions on the Foreshore Adjacent to National Park that do not adversely affect the values of the reserve and complement the values and vision for the adjacent national park.

**12.7 Method**

1. *All recreation concessions on Foreshore Adjacent to National Park should be in accordance with the conditions set out in Table 6.*

# Glossary

---

**activity:** Includes a trade, business, or occupation. (*Reserves Act 1977*)

**Administration Committee:** The committee, comprising the Chief Executive Officer of the Tasman District Council and the Conservator of the Nelson Marlborough Conservancy of the Department of Conservation, as appointed by the Minister of Conservation under section 9 of the Reserves Act 1977 to administer the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve.

**advocacy:** The actions taken by the Administration Committee to protect and preserve the values of the reserve in relation to activities undertaken on adjacent private land, the coastal marine area and in the air, using resource management and local government planning mechanisms, and other processes. It also includes a range of other methods to inform and educate the public and visitors on conservation issues.

**aircraft:** Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth. (*Civil Aviation Act 1990*)

**all-terrain vehicle:** A special-purpose vehicle (with or without motorcycle controls and equipment) that – (a) is principally designed for off-road use; and (b) has 3 or more wheels; and (c) has an engine capacity exceeding 50 ml; and (d) has a gross weight of less than 1000 kg. (*Land Transport (Driver Licensing) Rule 1999*)

**anchoring:** The securing of a vessel to the bed of the reserve by means of an anchor, cable or other device, that is normally removed with the vessel when it leaves the site or anchorage. 'Anchor' and 'anchored' have a similar meaning. (based on *Tasman District Council Navigation Safety Bylaw, December 2005*)

**animal:** Any mammal, bird, reptile, amphibian, fish (including shellfish) or related organism, insect, crustacean, or organism of every kind; but does not include a human being. (*Reserves Act 1977*)

**archaeological site:** Any place in New Zealand that (a) Either (i) Was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; or (ii) Is the site of a wreck of any vessel where that wreck occurred before 1900; and (b) Is or may be able through investigation by archaeological means to provide evidence relating to the history of New Zealand. (*Historic Places Act 1993*)

**Astrolabe Roadstead:** (Whenuakura/Te Karetu) The coastal area between Adele Island/Motuarero-nui and the mainland.

**at risk (species):** Taxa that, although declining, have small populations or have small areas of occupancy, but are not facing imminent extinction. There are four categories for 'at risk' species: Declining; Recovering; Relict; and Naturally Uncommon.

**bareboat charter:** A vessel that is offered for hire or reward where clients are not accompanied by a guide and/or skipper. It does not include freedom kayaks or other similar self-propelled vessels.

**biodiversity:** The variability among living organisms from all sources including terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and ecological complexes of which they are part. This includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**boat:** Every description of vessel (including barges, rafts, lighters, and like vessels) used in navigation, however propelled. (*Reserves Act 1977*)

**charter boat:** A commercial vessel (excluding hovercraft, amphibious vessels and other similar vessels), with an engine that provides the primary or secondary means of propulsion, that conveys one or more charter clients, where:

- (a) The vessel is under the control of a skipper, and a guide may also accompany the client(s);
- (b) The charter is a minimum of three hours duration on the waters adjacent to, and within 1 nautical mile (1852 m) of, the reserve (see Map 10, page 139);
- (c) No new charter client(s) are picked up during a charter;
- (d) The vessel remains with the charter client(s) at all times, which may include dropping the charter client(s) off at one location on the reserve and travelling along the coast to pick those same client(s) up who have walked to another location on the reserve;
- (e) The vessel displays the appropriate concession identification tag for charter boat activity; and
- (f) The vessel has a fully operational tracking device, if required.

**Note 1:** Provided the charter boat and any associated motorised servicing vessel does not enter the reserve, clients may go ashore at any location if they enter the reserve by their own means (by swimming or non-motorised watercraft).

**Note 2:** Further conditions of operation are set out in the body of this management plan (see sections 8.2.4 'Charter boat activity', 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions', 12.7.1 'Recreation concessions').

**charter client:** A person who has purchased or hired a place on a charter boat trip.

**commercial vessel:** A vessel that is offered for hire or reward, where clients/passengers are accompanied by a guide and/or skipper, and the activity is licensed by Tasman District Council in accordance with the Tasman District Council Navigation Safety Bylaw (December 2005, including amendments and any subsequent review). A commercial vessel may be motorised (e.g. water taxi or charter boat) or non-motorised (e.g. kayak).

**concession:** A lease, licence, permit or an easement granted under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act 1987 with reference to section 59A of the Reserves Act 1977, to enable the carrying out of a trade, occupation or business, and includes any activity authorised by the concession document.

**concessionaire:** A person who is: a lessee; or a licensee; or a permit holder; or the grantee of an easement, under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act pursuant to section 59A of the Reserves Act 1977.

**conservation:** The preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations. (*Conservation Act 1987*)

**conservation board:** Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. The primary functions and powers of conservation boards are set out in the Conservation Act 1987 and the National Parks Act 1980 (sections 6M and 6N, Conservation Act 1987 and section 30, National Parks Act 1980). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

Map 10: One nautical mile from the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve.



**Conservation General Policy 2005:** General Policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the following Acts listed in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act 1987: the Conservation Act 1987; the Wildlife Act 1953; the Marine Reserves Act 1971; the Reserves Act 1977; the Wild Animal Control Act 1977; and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. Conservation General Policy provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of the above Acts.

**conservation management plan:** A plan for the management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes which implements a conservation management strategy and establishes detailed objectives for integrated management within a place or places specified in a conservation management strategy (section 17E, Conservation Act 1987). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**conservation management strategy:** A strategy which implements general policies and establishes objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes. A conservation management strategy is reviewed every ten years (section 17D, Conservation Act 1987). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**consultation:** An invitation to give advice, and the consideration of that advice. To achieve consultation, sufficient information must be supplied and sufficient time allowed by the consulting party to those consulted to enable them to tender helpful advice. It involves an ongoing dialogue. It does not necessarily mean acceptance of the other party's view, but enables informed decision-making by having regard to those views. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**crowd(ing):** Large number of persons gathered together without orderly arrangement. (*Concise Oxford Dictionary, 6th ed*)

**cruise ship:** A ship of 500 gross tons or more used to carry passengers, who are accommodated on-board, on pleasure voyages, where:

- (a) The voyage itself and the ship's amenities are part of the experience;
- (b) The ship is under the control of a captain, and a guide or guides may also accompany the passengers;
- (c) The ship remains within the waters adjacent to the reserve while passengers are visiting the reserve; and
- (d) All passengers who disembark onto the reserve return to the ship.

**Note:** Further conditions of operation are set out in the body of this management plan (see sections 8.2.9 'Cruise ships', 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions', 12.7.1 'Recreation concessions').

**cultural:** Societal values with an emphasis on New Zealand/European history and Māori tikanga that are handed down through the generations. (*General Policy for National Parks, 2005*)

**cumulative effects:** An effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects (section 3, Resource Management Act 1991). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**customary use:** Gathering and use of natural resources by tangata whenua according to tikanga. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**declining:** A population of 5000-20,000 mature individuals with 10-30% ongoing or predicted decline; or a population of 20,000-100,000 mature individuals with 10-50% ongoing or predicted decline; or a population of >100,000 mature individuals with 10-70% ongoing or predicted decline. (*New Zealand Threat Classification System manual*)

**Department:** Department of Conservation.

**Director-General:** Director-General of Conservation.

**ecology:** Branch of biology dealing with organisms' relations to one another and to their surroundings. (*Concise Oxford Dictionary, 6th ed*)

**ecosystem:** A biological system comprising a community of living organisms and its associated non-living environment, interacting as an ecological unit. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**effect:** Any positive or adverse effect; and any temporary or permanent effect; any past, present, or future effect; and any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect and also includes any potential effect of high probability; and any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact (section 3, Resource Management Act 1991). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**endemic:** Refers to species of plants and animals which are unique to an area or animals which may migrate but breed only in the area. (*Red Data Book of New Zealand 1981*)

**Environmental Care Code:** Guidelines published by the Department of Conservation (and available on the website [www.doc.govt.nz](http://www.doc.govt.nz)) to help visitors protect the natural environment.

**eradicate:** To remove completely. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**excessive noise:** Any noise that unreasonably disturbs or annoys, or is likely to unreasonably disturb or annoy, any other person or indigenous fauna in the reserve, and includes sound or noise produced or caused by any (a) portable generator; (b) instrument (whether musical or not); (c) public address system; or (d) amplified sound system. (*Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve Bylaws 2008*)

**exotic:** Introduced species, including indigenous species that are not native to the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve.

**fauna:** Animals of any kind. (*Reserves Act 1977*)

**fish:** Includes all species of finfish and shellfish, at any stage of their life history, whether living or dead. (*Fisheries Act 1996*)

**fishing:** The catching, taking, or harvesting of fish (including shellfish) or aquatic life; and includes any activity that may reasonably be expected to result in the catching, taking, or harvesting of fish (including shellfish) or aquatic life. (based on *Fisheries Act 1996*)

**floating accommodation:** A commercial vessel that provides overnight accommodation for visitors to the reserve and adjacent national park.

**flora:** Plants of any kind. (*Reserves Act 1977*)

**foreshore:** For the purpose of this plan, all land lying between the High Water Mark and Mean Low Water Springs, which forms the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve.

**freedom:** Non-guided activity that is:

- (a) unassisted and does not involve the use of hire equipment, guides or instructors;  
or
- (b) facilitated and involves the rental of hire equipment (e.g. non-motorised watercraft) to access the reserve, where the participants are not directly supervised by a guide or instructor.

**game birds:** The wildlife declared to be game specified in the First Schedule to the Wildlife Act 1953: black swan, Canada goose, chukar, grey duck, mallard duck, paradise duck, spoonbill duck, partridge, red-legged partridge, pheasant, pukeko, Australian quail, Californian quail and Virginian quail.

**habitat:** The environment within which a particular species or group of species lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**hapū:** Kinship group, clan, tribe, subtribe – section of a large kinship group. (*Te Aka Māori-English, English-Māori Dictionary*)

**hire equipment:** non-motorised watercraft and other equipment supplied by a hire operator for guided or non-guided trips or other activities utilising the reserve and/or the adjacent national park.

**hire operator/s:** commercial operators who provide hire equipment (e.g. non-motorised watercraft) for guided or non-guided trips or other activities utilising the reserve.

**historic area:** An area of land that (a) Contains an inter-related group of historic places; and (b) Forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand; and (c) Lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand. (*Historic Places Act 1993*)

**historic place:** (a) Means: (i) Any land (including an archaeological site); or (ii) Any building or structure (including part of a building or structure); or (iii) Any combination of land and a building or structure; or (iv) any combination of land, buildings or structures, and associated buildings or structures (including any part of those buildings or structures, or associated buildings or structures) - that forms a place that is part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand; and (b) Includes anything that is in or fixed to such land. (*Historic Places Act 1993*)

**historic resource:** An historic place within the meaning of the Historic Places Act 1993. Includes any interest in an historic resource. (*Conservation Act 1987*)

**historical and cultural heritage:** Any building or other structure, archaeological site, natural feature, wāhi tapu, or object, associated with people, traditions, events or ideas, which contribute to an understanding of New Zealand's history and cultures. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**indigenous species:** Refers to plants and animals that have established in New Zealand without the assistance of human beings and without the assistance of vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**integrate:** Bring together.

**integrated conservation management:** The management of natural resources, and historical and cultural heritage, and existing or potential activities in a manner which ensures that priorities are clear and that the effects of each activity on others are considered and managed accordingly. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**interpretation:** Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of national or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media. It occurs in the vicinity of the subject and is designed to stimulate visitor interest, increase understanding and promote support for conservation.

**intrinsic value:** A concept which regards the subject under consideration as having value or worth in its own right independent of any value placed on it by humans. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**introduced (species):** An organism (including indigenous species) that is not endemic to a given location but has been accidentally or deliberately introduced to a new location by human activity or by natural means.

**invertebrates:** Animals without backbones - including snails, insects, worms, etc.

**iwi:** Extended kinship group, tribe, nation, people, race – often refers to a large group of people descended from a common ancestor. (*Te Aka Māori-English, English-Māori Dictionary*)

**kaitiaki:** Guardian. (*Conservation General Policy, 2005*)

**kaitiakitanga:** The exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga. In relation to a resource this includes the ethic of stewardship based upon the nature of the resource itself. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**land vehicle:** Means any device that is powered by any propulsion system and moves on rollers, skids, tracks, wheels, revolving runners or other means on land; and includes any device referred to previously from which the propulsion system has been removed; or the rollers, skids, tracks, wheels, revolving runners or other means of movement have been removed; and includes a hovercraft or a seaplane while it is on the surface of the land; and does not include: (a) a pushchair or pram; (b) a child's toy; or (c) a personal mobility device not propelled by mechanical power. (adapted from *Conservation General Policy 2005* and *Land Transport Act 1998*)

**lease:** A grant of an interest in land that gives exclusive possession of the land, and makes provision for any activity on the land that the lessee is permitted to carry out. (derived from *Reserves Act 1977*)

**licence:** A profit à prendre or any other grant that gives a non-exclusive interest in land, or a grant that makes provision for any activity on the land that the licensee is permitted to carry out. (derived from *Reserves Act 1977*)

**mana:** Prestige; authority. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**Management Plan Approval Committee:** A subcommittee of the Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board appointed in accordance with section 6N(2)(b) of the Conservation Act 1987 to approve the management plan for the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve. This Committee comprises: the Conservation Board chairperson; the Chief Executive Officer of Tasman District Council; the Conservator of the Nelson Marlborough Conservancy of the Department of Conservation; one Tasman District Council nominee; and two nominees from tangata whenua.

**management planning:** The process of setting and confirming objectives for the management of natural and historic resources, and recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes, and specifying the actions and resources necessary to achieve those objectives. (*Management Planning Guidelines, Department of Conservation*)

**manawhenua:** Customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapū or individual in an identified area. (*Reserves Act 1977*)

**marine reserve:** A marine area constituted as a marine reserve under the Marine Reserves Act 1971. (*Reserves Act 1977*)

**Mean High Water Mark:** The average height of all high water levels. (*NZ Institute of Surveyors, 1991*)

**mining:** Means to take, win or extract, by whatever means, a mineral existing in its natural state in land, or a chemical substance from that mineral, for the purpose of obtaining the mineral or chemical substance; but does not include prospecting or exploration; and to 'mine' has a corresponding meaning (Crown Minerals Act 1991). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**Minister:** The Minister of Conservation.

**mooring:** Any weight or article placed in or on the foreshore for the purpose of securing a vessel, raft, aircraft, or floating structure; and includes any chain, wire, rope, buoy, or other device attached or connected to the weight; but does not include an anchor that is normally removed with the vessel, raft, aircraft, or floating structure when it leaves the site or anchorage. (based on *Tasman District Council Navigation Safety Bylaw, December 2005*)

**motorised vessel:** Any boat, vessel or craft used in navigation, not primarily powered by sail or solely powered manually, and includes a hovercraft and a seaplane while it is on the surface of the water. (adapted from *Maritime Rules: Part 91 – Navigation Safety Rules*)

**nationally critical:** population of <250 mature individuals (natural or unnatural); or a small population (natural or unnatural) with a high ongoing or predicted decline; or a population (irrespective of size or number of sub-populations) with a very high ongoing or predicted decline (>70%). (*New Zealand Threat Classification System manual*)

**nationally endangered:** population of 250–1000 mature individuals (natural or unnatural) with a 10 to 50% ongoing or predicted decline; or a stable population of 250-1000 mature individuals (unnatural); or a population of 1000-5000 mature individuals with a 50-70% ongoing or predicted decline. (*New Zealand Threat Classification System manual*)

**nationally vulnerable:** population of 250-1000 mature individuals (unnatural) increasing at >10%; or a stable population of 1000-5000 mature individuals (unnatural); or a population of 1000-5000 mature individuals that is declining at 10-50%; or a population of 5000-20,000 mature individuals that has a 30-70% ongoing or predicted decline; or a population of 20,000-100,000 mature individuals that has a 50-70% ongoing or predicted decline. (*New Zealand Threat Classification System manual*)

**natural:** Existing in or produced by nature. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**natural character:** The qualities of an area which are the result of natural processes and taken together give it a particular recognisable character. These qualities may be ecological, physical, spiritual or aesthetic in nature. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**Natural Heritage Management System (NHMS):** A national system for managing biodiversity, developed by the Department of Conservation, that provides an integrated and scientifically sound suite of tools for supporting New Zealand's natural heritage managers to make more consistent decisions and monitor their progress to national outcomes.

**natural quiet:** Natural ambient conditions in a natural area; the sounds of nature. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**natural state:** Unmodified by human activity or introduced plants or animals. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**New Zealand Conservation Authority, (NZCA):** A national body of 13 appointed members established under section 6A of the Conservation Act 1987. Amongst other functions, it has the statutory responsibility for approving General Policy for national parks, conservation management strategies and plans and national park management plans (section 6B, Conservation Act 1987 and section 18, National Parks Act 1980). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**ngā taonga tūturu:** Means 2 or more taonga tūturu. (*Protected Objects Act 1975*)

**non-guided:** see definition of 'freedom'.

**non-motorised watercraft:** any boat, vessel or craft used in navigation that is primarily powered by sail or solely powered manually (such as, but not limited to, an outrigger canoe, waka, kayak, paddleboard, dinghy, trailer yacht or windsurfer).

**objectives:** Long term goals with a 20-50 year timeframe.

**outcome:** A goal or end result of a conservation action or series of actions. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**permit:** A grant of rights to carry out an activity that does not require an interest in land. (*Reserves Act 1977*)

**personal watercraft (including, but not limited to, jet skis):** Power-driven vessel that has a fully enclosed hull, does not retain water on board if it capsizes, and is designed to be operated by a person standing, sitting or kneeling on the vessel, but not seated within the vessel; and may include space for one or more passengers. (*General Policy for National Parks, 2005*)

**pest:** Any organism, including an animal, plant, pathogen or disease, capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm or posing significant risks to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems or freshwater fisheries. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**place:** An area identified in a conservation management strategy or plan for the purposes of integrated management. It may include any combination of terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas and may be determined by a range of criteria including but not limited to: ecological districts, geological features, catchments, internal departmental, regional or district council or rohe/takiwā boundaries, land status, major recreation or tourism destinations, commonality of management considerations and unique management needs. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**pou whenua:** Marker pole or post. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**preservation:** In relation to a resource, means the maintenance, so far as is practicable, of its intrinsic values (section 2, Conservation Act 1987). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**private accommodation:** Place to live or lodge that is not available to the general public on an open basis. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**private land:** Any land that is any Māori land within the meaning of Te Ture Whenua Māori (Māori Land) Act 1993 or has been alienated from the Crown, or is land held in fee simple (freehold title).

**profit à prendre:** A right to enter upon land to take some part of the land that is capable of being owned e.g., soil, mineral, vegetation.

**protected New Zealand object:** An object forming part of the movable cultural heritage of New Zealand that – (a) is of importance to New Zealand, or part of New Zealand, for aesthetic, archaeological, architectural, artistic, cultural, historical, literary, scientific, social, spiritual, technological, or traditional reasons; and (b) falls within 1 or more of the categories of protected objects set out in Schedule 4. (*Protected Objects Act 1975*) This includes any taonga tūturu.

**protection:** In relation to a resource, means its maintenance, so far as is practicable, in its current state; but includes: (a) its restoration to some former state; and (b) its augmentation, enhancement, or expansion (section 2, Conservation Act 1987). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**public conservation land:** Crown land administered (directly or indirectly) by the Department of Conservation for conservation purposes and is covered by the Conservation General Policy 2005. The Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve is public conservation land administered, under delegated authority, by the Administration Committee.

**recovering:** A population with 1000–5000 mature individuals or that occupies an area of ≤ 100 ha; or a population with 5000 – 20,000 mature individuals or that occupies an area of ≤ 1000 ha; both with ongoing or predicted increase of >10% in the total population or area of occupancy. (*New Zealand Threat Classification System manual*)

**regional policy statements:** These set out the objectives for managing resources and are prepared by regional councils and unitary authorities in accordance with the Resource Management Act 1991. They provide the overall framework for achieving sustainable management in the region and are binding on regional and district plans. (*Resource Management Act 1991, Regional Policy Statements and Plans, Ministry for the Environment.*)

**relic:** An object that is interesting because of its age or historical association.

**relict:** Taxa that have undergone a documented decline and now occupy <10% of their former range and have: 5000 – 20,000 mature individuals and are stable; or have >20,000 mature individuals and are stable or increasing at >10%. (*New Zealand Threat Classification System manual*)

**resource management plan:** The Tasman Resource Management Plan, prepared by the Tasman District Council in accordance with sections 63 and 72 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for the purpose of sustainable management of natural and physical resources.

**restoration:** The active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms and landscapes in order to restore indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes and their cultural and visual qualities; or for historic heritage, to return a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**review:** In relation to any conservation management strategy or management plan means to consider all objectives and policies of those provisions under review and to approve a new strategy or plan, having regard to increased knowledge or changed circumstances. (*Conservation Act 1987*)

**rohe:** Geographical territory of an iwi or hapū. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**site:** For the purposes of managing and monitoring visitor numbers in the Recreational Zones, a site can be any point in the Zone, which may be the busiest point.

**skipper:** The person in command or in charge of a commercial vessel.

**species recovery plan:** A plan of action intended to halt the decline of a 'threatened' or 'at risk' species and increase its population.

**support vessel:** A commercial vessel used to accompany water-based commercially guided activity, and/or transport guided non-motorised watercraft associated with that activity, to or from the reserve, where:

- (a) The vessel is under the control of a skipper;
- (b) The vessel displays the appropriate concession identification tag for support vessel activity; and
- (c) The vessel has a fully operational tracking device, if required.

**Note:** Further conditions of operation are set out in the body of this management plan (see sections 8.2.5 'Support vessel activity', 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions', 12.7.1 'Recreation concessions').

**taking:** In relation to plants and seaweed this includes breaking, cutting, destroying, digging up, gathering, plucking, pulling up and removing the plant or seaweed. In relation to fish it means fishing.

**tangata whenua:** Iwi or hapū that has customary authority in a place. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*). For Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve tangata whenua includes Ngāti Tama Ki Te Tau Ihu (Ngāti Tama), Te Ātiawa Ki Te Tau Ihu (Te Ātiawa) and Ngāti Rārua Ki Te Tau Ihu (Ngāti Rārua).

**taonga:** Valued resources or prized possessions held by Māori, both material and non-material. It is a broad concept that includes tangible and intangible aspects of natural and historic resources of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu and intellectual property. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**taonga tūturu:** An object that - (a) relates to Māori culture, history, or society; and (b) was, or appears to have been, - (i) manufactured or modified in New Zealand by Māori; or (ii) brought into New Zealand by Māori; or (iii) used by Māori; and (c) is more than 50 years old. (*Protected Objects Act 1975*)

**taxa:** Genera, species, subspecies, varieties and forma.

**tender** (in relation to cruise ships): A boat used to service the cruise ship, generally by transporting people and/or supplies to and from the cruise ship and the reserve.

**threatened (species):** Taxa that are facing imminent extinction. There are three main categories for 'threatened' species: Nationally Critical; Nationally Endangered; and Nationally Vulnerable.

**tikanga:** Māori custom, obligations and conditions. (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**vessel:** Every description of boat or craft used in navigation, whether or not it has any means of propulsion; and includes: (a) a barge, lighter, or other like vessel; (b) a hovercraft or other thing deriving full or partial support in the atmosphere from the reaction of air against the surface of the water over which it operates; (c) a submarine or other submersible; (d) a seaplane while it is on the surface of the water. (*Tasman District Council Navigation Safety Bylaw, December 2005*)

**vessel servicing floating accommodation:** A commercial vessel used to transport guests between the reserve and floating accommodation (or vice versa), where:

- (a) The vessel is under the control of a skipper, and a guide may also accompany the guests;
- (b) The vessel displays the appropriate concession identification tag for servicing floating accommodation activity; and
- (c) The vessel has a fully operational tracking device, if required.

**Note:** further conditions of operation are set out in the body of this management plan (see sections 8.2.6 'Servicing floating accommodation activity', 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions', 12.7.1 'Recreation concessions').

**wāhi tapu:** Place sacred to Māori in the traditional, spiritual, religious, ritual, or mythological sense (Historic Places Act 1993). (*Conservation General Policy 2005*)

**water taxi:** A commercial vessel that provides transportation for water taxi passengers, goods and non-motorised watercraft, between pre-set embarkation and disembarkation points on the reserve, where:

- (a) The vessel is under the control of a skipper, and a guide may also accompany the passengers;
- (b) The vessel displays the appropriate concession identification tag for water taxi activity; and
- (c) The vessel has a fully operational tracking device, if required.

**Note 1:** Provided the water taxi does not enter the reserve, passengers may go ashore at any location if they enter the reserve by their own means (by swimming or non-motorised watercraft).

**Note 2:** further conditions of operation are set out in the body of this management plan (see sections 8.2.3 'Water taxi activity', 11.7.1 'Recreation concessions', 12.7.1 'Recreation concessions').

**water taxi passenger:** A person who has purchased a fare to be transported by a water taxi.

# Bibliography

---

## Department of Conservation publications

Department of Conservation, 1995: Historic Heritage Strategy.

Department of Conservation, 1996: Nelson Marlborough Conservation Management Strategy. Nelson Marlborough Conservancy Management Plan Series No. 10.

Department of Conservation, 1996: Visitor Strategy.

Department of Conservation, 1997: Nelson Marlborough Island Strategy.

Department of Conservation, 1997: Historic Resources Strategy: Nelson Marlborough

Department of Conservation, 1998: Foreshore Investigation – Abel Tasman National Park.

Department of Conservation, 2003: Abel Tasman National Park Coast Visitor Research.

Department of Conservation, 2005: Conservation General Policy.

Department of Conservation, 2008: New Zealand Threat Classification System manual.

Department of Conservation, 2008: Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan.

## Tasman District Council

Tasman District Council: Tasman Resource Management Plan.

Tasman District Council, 2006: Consolidated Bylaw, Chapter 5 – Navigation Safety.

## Other publications

de Lange, P.J., Norton, D.A., Courtney, S.P., Heenan, P.B., Barkla, J.W., Cameron, E.K., Hitchmough, R., and Townsend, A.J.: Threatened and uncommon plants of New Zealand (2008 revision). *New Zealand Journal of Botany* vol. 47 no.1 (2009), 61-96.

# Appendix 1

---

## Management planning

### Management plan process

This management plan is prepared according to section 40B of the Reserves Act 1977, and the process set out in the relevant parts of sections 17E to 17G of the Conservation Act 1987. The steps are:

- (i) The Administration Committee (on behalf of the Director-General) prepares the draft management plan in consultation with key stakeholders
- (ii) The Administration Committee notifies the draft management plan for formal public submissions
- (iii) The Management Plan Approval Committee hears the public submissions
- (iv) The Administration Committee amends the draft for consideration by the Management Plan Approval Committee
- (v) The Management Plan Approval Committee considers the amended plan, and may request further revision
- (vi) When satisfied, the Management Plan Approval Committee approves the plan

At any time before the last step, the New Zealand Conservation Authority (NZCA) or the Minister of Conservation may require the plan to be sent to the NZCA for approval (in accordance with section 17G(3) of the Conservation Act 1987). If this occurs, the NZCA may make further amendments to the plan before they approve it (instead of the Management Plan Approval Committee).

### Objectives, policies, methods and outcomes

Within this plan the 'Objectives' (both primary and place specific) are long term goals, with a 20 to 50 year timeframe; the 'Policies' set out the overall intentions to meet the Objectives; the 'Methods' explain what the Administration Committee needs to do to implement the Policies; and the Outcomes illustrate what results will be achieved. The Policies, Methods and Outcomes relate to a timeframe within the life of this plan, provided sufficient funding is available.

Conservation General Policy 2005 is a statutory document which sets policies that give direction and guidance on the exercise of discretions provided under the Reserves Act 1977. Conservation General Policy 1(d) must be used to interpret the use of the words 'will', 'should' and 'may' in the Methods contained in this plan, as set out below:

*"1(d) The words 'will', 'should' and 'may' have the following meanings:*

- i. Policies where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making, or a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions 'will' be undertaken.*
- ii. Policies that carry with them a strong expectation of outcome, without diminishing the constitutional role of the Minister and other decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions 'should' be undertaken.*
- iii. Policies intended to allow flexibility in decision-making, state that a particular action or actions 'may' be undertaken."*

Note that when the term 'should' is used it is anticipated that there will only be very exceptional circumstances where the result, or decision of the Administration Committee, will differ to that expressed in the Method. While it is essential to acknowledge the discretionary nature of decision making, this plan and its Methods are designed to give as much certainty as possible regarding the Administration Committee's management of the reserve.

If an exceptional circumstance arises during the life of this plan, where there is no clear guidance for the Administration Committee, then:

- (a) The plan may be amended in accordance with section 40B(8) of the Reserves Act 1977 and 17I of the Conservation Act 1987; or
- (b) Decisions will be guided by the primary objectives for the reserve and the objectives and outcome statements for the relevant place. Such decisions may be referred to the Director-General of Conservation or the Minister of Conservation.

## **Animal and plant classification**

There are references to animals and plants throughout the plan. In general, the main text uses the common name. Appendix 4 lists species likely to be found in the reserve by their common, scientific and Māori names.

## **Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve**

The Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve comprises all that area of land (foreshore) and water between the Mean High Water Mark (MHW) and Mean Low Water Springs (MLWS) adjacent to the Abel Tasman National Park, other publicly administered lands (excluding formed and unformed legal roads), and private land, from the northern end of the Marahau causeway in the south to Wainui estuary in the north and around the islands of the national park (Ngaio, Fisherman/Motuarero-iti, Adele/ Motuarero-nui, Pinnacle, Tonga and Tata islands) (see Map 1, page 11). The reserve includes all the estuaries that are exposed at low tide, such as at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa, Bark Bay/Wairima, Awaroa, Totaranui, and Wainui. The reserve also overlays the foreshore areas of the Tonga Island Marine Reserve.

Except where the reserve directly adjoins formed and unformed legal roads, the boundaries of the reserve are ambulatory, which means that the boundaries move as the foreshore naturally erodes and accretes. Consequently, the cadastral (surveyed) boundaries can be misleading when overlain on aerial photographs as they do not necessarily equate to the physical position of MHW and MLWS at the time.

Where the reserve adjoins a legal road (formed or unformed), the boundary would have been the seaward side of the road boundary. This, however, is subject to section 315(4) and (5) of the Local Government Act 1974 and section 14 of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011. In accordance with these provisions:

- (i) Where there is accretion to a road, along the MHW, the accreted area forms part of the road (and the reserve will be less extensive than it was originally)

- (ii) Where there has been erosion of a road, along the MHW, the eroded area continues to be road (and the reserve remains where it was prior to the erosion) until 31 March 2016, or 31 March 2021, or 31 March 2026 (depending on when the erosion occurs). At which time, if the road is unformed, the portion of the unformed road that is below Mean High Water Springs becomes part of the common marine and coastal area, unless the Minister states otherwise.

### *Adjacent lands and coastal waters*

The seabed and coastal waters below MLWS and the land above the MHW are outside the reserve. This management plan can only directly manage activities within the reserve. However, this plan can provide direction for advocacy on issues related to the management of the adjacent lands and sea, particularly the national park<sup>24</sup>, as directed by Conservation General Policy 13(c) (see Appendix 9). Integrated management can be achieved by Tasman District Council and the Department of Conservation working together to develop common outcomes for the Abel Tasman coastal environment as a whole.

---

<sup>24</sup> The Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan was approved in October 2008 and provides management guidance for the adjacent national park.

# Appendix 2

---

## Legislation and statutory documents

### Reserves Act 1977

Section 3(1) of the Reserves Act 1977 states that the general purpose of the Act is:

- (a) *Providing, for the preservation and management for the benefit and enjoyment of the public, areas of New Zealand possessing -*
  - (i) *Recreational use or potential, whether active or passive; or*
  - (ii) *Wildlife; or*
  - (iii) *Indigenous flora or fauna; or*
  - (iv) *Environmental and landscape amenity or interest; or*
  - (v) *Natural, scenic, historic, cultural, archaeological, biological, geological, scientific, educational, community, or other special features or value.*
- (b) *Ensuring, as far as possible, the survival of all indigenous species of flora and fauna, both rare and commonplace, in their natural communities and habitats, and the preservation of representative samples of all classes of natural ecosystems and landscape which in the aggregate originally gave New Zealand its own recognisable character:*
- (c) *Ensuring, as far as possible, the preservation of access for the public to and along the sea coast, its bays and inlets and offshore islands, lakeshores, and riverbanks, and fostering and promoting the preservation of the natural character of the coastal environment and of the margins of lakes and rivers and the protection of them from unnecessary subdivision and development.*

Section 19(1)(a) of the Reserves Act 1977 declares that the provisions of the Act shall have effect, in relation to reserves classified as scenic reserves:

*For the purpose of protecting and preserving in perpetuity for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, enjoyment, and use of the public, suitable areas possessing such qualities of scenic interest, beauty or natural features or landscape that their protection and preservation are desirable in the public interest.*

This management plan has been prepared under section 40B of the Reserves Act 1977 and provides for the management of the reserve in accordance with the Act.

### Conservation Act 1987

The Conservation Act 1987 established the Department of Conservation. It directs the administration and management of all land and resources under the Department of Conservation's control. The Conservation Act 1987 also contains provisions regarding concessions (leases, licences, permits and easements) on land administered by the Department of Conservation.

### Conservation General Policy 2005

The Director-General prepared, and the Minister of Conservation approved, the Conservation General Policy 2005, under sections 17B and 17C of the Conservation Act 1987, to provide unified policy for the interpretation and exercise of discretions

contained in the Conservation Act 1987, and the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.

This management plan must be consistent with the Conservation General Policy 2005. Those policies that are specifically referred to in this plan are set out in full in Appendix 9, but it should be noted that there are a number of other policies that this plan must give effect to.

### ***Conservation Management Strategy***

There is a Conservation Management Strategy for the area covered by the Nelson Marlborough Conservancy. It is an overarching document that sets the general direction for the management of all land administered by the Department of Conservation in the conservancy.

Section 17D(1) of the Conservation Act 1987 states that the purpose of a CMS is: *'to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including any species, managed by the Department under the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, the National Parks Act 1980, the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990, Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 or this Act, or any of them, and for recreation, tourism, and other conservation purposes.'*

### **Resource Management Act 1991**

Section 5 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) states:

- (1) *The purpose of this Act is to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources.*
- (2) *In this Act, "sustainable management" means managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety while -*
  - (a) *Sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; and*
  - (b) *Safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems; and*
  - (c) *Avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment.*

Section 6 of the RMA sets out the matters of national importance, which are all relevant to the reserve.

The RMA is administered by Tasman District Council and implemented through the Tasman Regional Policy Statement (RPS) and the Tasman Resource Management Plan (TRMP). The activities of the Administration Committee are bound by the provisions of the RMA, the RPS and the TRMP. The Administration Committee must apply for resource consents for activities as required under the RMA or the TRMP.

Sections 61(2)(a)(i), 66(2)(c)(i) and 74(2)(b)(i) of the RMA require Tasman District Council to have regard to any management plans and strategies prepared under other Acts when preparing a regional policy statement, a regional plan or a district plan. Tasman District Council therefore needs to have regard to the CMS for the Nelson

Marlborough Conservancy, the Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan and this management plan when preparing or reviewing their plans and strategies.

### ***New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement***

The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (NZCPS) is required by section 57 of the RMA. Its purpose is to state policies in order to achieve the purpose of the RMA in relation to the coastal environment of New Zealand. The NZCPS is prepared by the Minister of Conservation.

Maintaining and managing the protected areas of the reserve (and the Abel Tasman National Park) gives effect to a number of NZCPS policies, including:

*Policy 4 Integration: 'Provide for the integrated management of natural and physical resources in the coastal environment, and activities that affect the coastal environment...'*

*Policy 5 Land or waters managed or held under other Acts: '(1) Consider effects on land or waters in the coastal environment held or managed under: (a) the Conservation Act 1987 and any Act listed in the 1st Schedule to that Act ...'*

*Policy 11 Indigenous biological diversity (biodiversity): 'To protect indigenous biological diversity in the coastal environment...'*

*Policy 13 Preservation of natural character: '(1) To preserve the natural character of the coastal environment and to protect it from inappropriate subdivision, use, and development: (a) avoid adverse effects of activities on natural character in areas of the coastal environment with outstanding natural character ...'*

*Policy 15 Natural features and natural landscapes: 'To protect the natural features and natural landscapes (including seascapes) of the coastal environment from inappropriate subdivision, use, and development...'*

*Policy 18 Public open space: 'Recognise the need for public open space within and adjacent to the coastal marine area, for public use and appreciation including active and passive recreation, and provide for such public open space, including by: (a) ensuring that the location and treatment of public open space is compatible with the natural character, natural features and landscapes, and amenity values of the coastal environment...'*

### ***Tasman Resource Management Plan***

Three objectives of the Tasman Resource Management Plan are particularly relevant to the management of the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve. These are within Chapter 20 - Effects of Craft Using the Surface of Coastal Waters and Chapter 21 - Effects of Disturbance, Structures and Occupation on Coastal Marine Conservation, Heritage, Access and Amenity Values. The three relevant objectives are:

#### **Objective 20.1.0**

*Safe navigation, amenity values and natural values that are not compromised by the passage of craft, or by other activities on the surface of the water.*

#### **Objective 21.1.0**

*Preservation of the natural character of the coastal marine area, particularly its margins, and including the maintenance of all values that contribute to natural character, and its protection from the adverse effects of use or development.*

#### **Objective 21.2.0**

*Avoidance, remedying, or mitigation of adverse effects on marine habitats and ecosystems caused by:*

- a. *access by vehicles, people, or animals;*
- b. *the introduction of species non-indigenous to the District;*
- c. *disturbance of the foreshore or seabed;*
- d. *the placement and use of structures for port, berthage, aquaculture, network utilities, roads, mineral extraction or any other purpose;*
- e. *the disposal of contaminants or waste, or accidental spillage of substances; especially in those areas having nationally or internationally important natural ecosystem values.*

### **Tasman Regional Coastal Plan**

The Tasman Regional Coastal Plan identifies the Abel Tasman coastline as internationally important for its 'natural ecosystem values', in particular its importance as a refuge for banded rail, reef heron and fernbird, its spectacular seascapes, its unique granite coast communities, and the presence of the endangered coastal peppergrass.

### **Maritime Transport Act 1994**

The Maritime Transport Act 1994 and its associated marine protection rules also provide for the protection of New Zealand's marine environment. The Act and the rules are administered by Maritime New Zealand. The marine protection rules set out the detailed technical requirements for ships' construction, pollution prevention equipment and operation, and restriction on the deliberate disposal of waste into the sea.

Tasman District Council, in conjunction with Nelson City Council, has a Joint Regional Oil Spill Contingency Plan, which addresses the response to most oil spills within the jurisdiction of these two councils.

### **Marine Reserves Act 1971**

The Marine Reserves Act 1971 is administered by the Department of Conservation, and provides for the setting up and management of areas of the sea and foreshore as marine reserves for the purpose of preserving them in their natural state as a habitat of marine life for scientific study. Section 3(3) of the Act prohibits fishing in a marine reserve, unless otherwise authorised.

Tonga Island Marine Reserve covers areas of foreshore and coastal waters on the Abel Tasman coast between Awaroa Head and Bark Bay/Wairima, including Tonga Island and other smaller islands (see Map 1, page 11). The Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve overlays the Tonga Island Marine Reserve, such that the provisions of the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the Reserves Act 1977 both apply to the foreshore of the marine reserve. Any activities in these areas must comply with both these Acts.

### **Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011**

The purpose of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 is set out in section 4:

- (1) *The purpose of this Act is to—*
- (a) *establish a durable scheme to ensure the protection of the legitimate interests of all New Zealanders in the marine and coastal area of New Zealand; and*
  - (b) *recognise the mana tuku iho exercised in the marine and coastal area by iwi, hapū, and whānau as tangata whenua; and*

- (c) *provide for the exercise of customary interests in the common marine and coastal area; and acknowledge the Treaty of Waitangi (te Tiriti o Waitangi).*
- (2) *To that end, this Act—*
- (a) *repeals the Foreshore and Seabed Act 2004 and restores customary interests extinguished by that Act; and*
  - (b) *contributes to the continuing exercise of mana tuku iho in the marine and coastal area; and*
  - (c) *gives legal expression to customary interests; and*
  - (d) *recognises and protects the exercise of existing lawful rights and uses in the marine and coastal area; and*
  - (e) *recognises, through the protection of public rights of access, navigation, and fishing, the importance of the common marine and coastal area—*
    - (i) *for its intrinsic worth; and*
    - (ii) *for the benefit, use, and enjoyment of the public of New Zealand.'*

### **Crown Minerals Act 1991**

The purpose of the Crown Minerals Act 1991, which is administered by the Ministry of Commerce, is to *'restate and reform the law relating to the management of Crown-owned minerals'*. Section 61(1A) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991 restricts access for mining Crown-owned minerals in that part of the reserve that overlays Tonga Island Marine Reserve.

### **Historic Places Act 1993**

The Historic Places Act 1993 seeks to promote the identification, protection, preservation, and conservation of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand. This includes historic places, such as archaeological sites and wāhi tapu. Under this Act it is an offence to destroy, damage, or modify any archaeological site without an authority from the New Zealand Historic Places Trust. The Act also requires an authority if there is a reasonable cause to suspect that an archaeological site (recorded or unrecorded) may be damaged, modified, or destroyed by any activity (other than by natural processes).

### **Other strategies and plans**

#### ***Tasman District Council strategies and plans***

Tasman District Council administers several reserves that are adjacent to the Abel Tasman Foreshore Reserve and private land at Anchorage, Torrent Bay/Rakauaroa and Awaroa:

- (i) Anchorage Esplanade Reserve (Lot 2 DP 7797)
- (ii) Torrent Bay Recreation Reserve (Lot 33 DP1612)
- (iii) Torrent Bay Public Reserve (Lots 10 & 11 DP1612)
- (iv) Torrent Bay Waterworks Reserve (Pt Sec 1 Blk III Kaiteriteri SD)
- (v) Awaroa Esplanade Reserves (Lots 5 and 6 DP11313, Lots 9 and 10 DP8100, Lot 1 DP11411)

The Anchorage Esplanade Reserve is a narrow strip of land on the coastal edge of four private properties on the eastern side of Anchorage. Torrent Bay Recreation Reserve and Torrent Bay Reserve are relatively small reserves adjoining privately-owned land in the Torrent Bay/Rakauroa settlement. Torrent Bay Waterworks Reserve covers 22 ha of land between the settlement and the adjoining national park. On their coastal boundaries, all three Torrent Bay/Rakauroa reserves are adjacent to legal road, which then adjoins the foreshore reserve. The Awaroa Esplanade Reserves comprise (for the most part) narrow strips of land separating private landholdings from the foreshore reserve.

Management of the reserves at Torrent Bay/Rakauroa is guided by the Motueka Ward Reserves Management Plan (2001) while the reserves at Awaroa come under the Golden Bay Ward Reserves Management Plan (2003). The Anchorage Esplanade Reserve is not specifically identified in a management plan.

### ***Department of Conservation strategies and plans***

The Department of Conservation produces plans, strategies and reviews of particular issues on a local and national basis. Relevant documents include the Statement of Intent (which sets out the long term directions for the Department); the Abel Tasman National Park Management Plan (2008); recovery plans for 'threatened' and 'at risk' indigenous species; and local animal/plant pest control plans.

The Department of Conservation and the Ministry for the Environment also produced the New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy (2000), in response to the state of decline of New Zealand's indigenous biodiversity. The strategy reflects New Zealand's commitment, through ratification of the international Convention on Biological Diversity, to help stem the loss of biodiversity worldwide. The purpose of the strategy is to establish a strategic framework for action, to conserve and sustainably use and manage New Zealand's biodiversity.

### **Other bodies with administrative responsibilities**

New Zealand Police - responsible for law and order and search and rescue.

New Zealand Fire Service - responsible for determining standards of fire prevention, safety and control.

Ministry of Transport: (a) Civil Aviation Authority - responsible for aviation safety and regulation; and (b) Maritime New Zealand - responsible for promoting maritime safety and security, and protection of the marine environment in New Zealand, and ensuring New Zealand's preparedness for, and ability to respond to, marine oil pollution spills.

Nelson/Marlborough Fish and Game Council - responsible for the issue of sports fish and game bird licences and for the sustainable management of sports fisheries and game birds.

New Zealand Historic Places Trust – responsible for providing the identification, protection, preservation and conservation of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and, in particular, the protection of archaeological sites and the registration of historic places.

Ministry of Fisheries – responsible for managing fishing (other than sports fish) within the freshwaters of the reserve and in the coastal waters adjoining the reserve.

## Appendix 3

### Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve creation, management and delegations

Body	Statutory basis	Powers/Role
Minister for Land Information	Section 52(1)(b) Public Works Act 1981	Declared the Abel Tasman foreshore to be scenic reserve (section 19(1)(a) Reserves Act 1977), vested in the Crown.
Minister of Conservation	Reserves Act 1977 Sections 9 & 10 Reserves Act 1977	Overall responsibility for the reserve.  Appointed a committee (the Administration Committee) to exercise delegated powers and functions of the Minister under the Reserves Act 1977. (These are listed on page 160). The committee is under the control of the Minister.
Director-General of Conservation	Section 62(4) Reserves Act 1977	Directed the Administration Committee to exercise and perform the rights, duties, powers and functions of the Commissioner for the reserve (these are all the powers, functions and duties in the Reserves Act of an administering body).  Delegated to the Administration Committee the Director-General's powers in respect of the preparation of this management plan for the reserve.
Nelson Marlborough Conservation Board	Section 6N(2)(b) Conservation Act 1987  Section 6M(1)(c) Conservation Act 1987	Appoint a committee (the Management Plan Approval Committee) to carry out the Conservation Board's role with respect to the approval of this management plan under section 17G(2) Conservation Act 1987 (and section 40B Reserves Act 1977).  Approve minor amendments to this plan in accordance with section 17I(4)(b) Conservation Act 1987 (and section 40B Reserves Act 1977).  Receive annual reports from the Administration Committee on the implementation of this plan.
Administration Committee		Consult with key stakeholders, prepare and publicly notify the draft management plan.  Receive submissions from the public, hold hearings (with representatives from the Management Plan Approval Committee), amend the draft management plan and present the plan to the Management Plan Approval Committee for approval.  Responsible for the day-to-day management and administration of the reserve in accordance with the Reserves Act 1977 and the management plan (when approved).
Management Plan Approval Committee		Hear public submissions on the draft management plan, receive the revised plan from the Administration Committee, and approve the plan.  If the plan is amended, or when the plan is reviewed, hear public submissions on the plan, receive and approve the plan.
Abel Tasman Foreshore Advisory Committee		Non-statutory consultative body that provided advice to the Administration Committee in the development of this management plan.

## Minister of Conservation's delegated powers to the Administration Committee under the Reserves Act 1977

Section	Summary of powers
6(3)	Correct error of description - revoke gazette and issue new amending notice.
8(2)	Appoint any suitable person to be a ranger or honorary ranger for the reserve.
8(6)	Appoint any ranger for a specified term.
8(7)	Remove any ranger for incapacity, neglect of duty or misconduct.
8(9)	Appoint any officer or servant to be a ranger for the reserve.
8(10)	Sign warrants for rangers.
16(1)	Classification of reserve.
16(4)	Give public notice specifying the classification proposed.
16(10)	Declare that a reserve shall be known by such name as is specified in gazette notice or change the name of any reserve.
19(2)(a)	Determine when exceptions can be made to the preservation of indigenous flora and fauna, ecological associations and the natural environment or the extermination of exotic flora and fauna of the reserve.
24(1)	Approve change of classification by gazette notice (not revocation).
24(2)	Publicly notify the change of classification.
40	Duty to administer, manage and control the reserve in accordance with the appropriate provisions of the Act.
40B	Prepare a management plan in accordance with relevant provisions of the Conservation Act.
42(1)	Consent to the cutting or destruction of trees and bush.
43(1)	Take steps to fence and maintain the reserve.
44(1)	Consent to permanent or temporary personal accommodation on the reserve.
44(2)	Permit any vehicle, caravan, tent or removable structure to remain on the reserve for more than 4 weeks during the period 1 November - 31 March.
45	Approve the erection of shelters to encourage public appreciation and enjoyment of outdoors and nature.
49	Grant the right to take specimens (subject to Wildlife Act provisions).
50(1)	Authorise the taking or killing of non-protected exotic fauna, or native fauna where Fisheries legislation applies (if such take is sustainable and ecological values indicate no adverse effects) and the use of fi rearms, traps, nets or other like objects for that purpose.
51(1)	Authorise introduction of indigenous flora/fauna for restoration of ecological communities, promoting survival of flora/fauna.
55(1)(a)	Approve planting in enclosed parts of the reserve.
55(2)(a)	Approve the enclosure of any open parts of the reserve.

Section	Summary of powers
55(2)(d)	Approve the setting apart of areas for camping grounds or mooring places for boats.
55(2)(e)	Approve the erection of buildings and other structures.
55(2)(f)	Approve all such things as is considered necessary to enable the public to obtain the benefit and enjoyment of the sea or stream bounding the reserve.
55(2)(g)	Approve the setting apart of areas for buildings and structures necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration and control of the reserve.
59A(1)	Grant concessions under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act, and impose charges.
59A(2)	Impose reasonable charges for the use of facilities on the reserve.
74(1)	Consent to the grant of licences over the reserve for the purposes envisaged by the section.
74(3B)	Grant licences as a concession under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act.
78(1)(b) & (3)	Direct that all money received by way of rent, royalty or otherwise, including as envisaged by s78(3), to be applied to managing/administering the reserve.

## Appendix 4

### Indigenous animal and plant species likely to be found within, or in the vicinity of, the reserve

Table 1 Indigenous animal species		
Common name	Scientific name	Māori name
Anemones	<i>Actinea tenebrosa</i> <i>Anthopleura aureoradiata</i>	Kōtore
Australasian harrier	<i>Circus approximans</i>	Kāhu
Australasian bittern	<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>	Matuku-hūrepo
Banded dotterel	<i>Charadrius bicinctus</i>	Tūturiwhatu
Banded kōkopu	<i>Galaxias fasciatus</i>	Kōkopu
Banded rail	<i>Rallus philippensis</i>	Moho-pererū
Barnacles	<i>Chaemosipho columna</i> <i>Elminius modestus</i> <i>Epopella plicata</i> <i>Tetraclita purpurascens</i>	Tiotio
Bar-tailed godwit	<i>Limosa lapponica</i>	Kuaka
Bat (long-tailed)	<i>Chalinolobus tuberculatus</i>	Pekapeka
Black-backed gull	<i>Larus dominicanus</i>	Karoro
Black shag	<i>Phalacrocorax carbo</i>	Kawau pū
Blue mussel	<i>Mytilus edulis</i>	Toretore
Blue penguin	<i>Eudyptula minor</i>	Kororā
Bluegill bully	<i>Gobiomorphus hubbsi</i>	Hawai
Bryozoan	<i>Watersipora culculata</i>	
Caddisfly spp		
Caspian tern	<i>Sterna caspia</i>	Taranui
Catseye	<i>Turbo smaragdus</i>	
Chitons	<i>Acanthochiton zelanica</i> <i>Chiton pelliserpentis</i> <i>Cryptoconchus porosus</i> <i>Eudoxochiton nobilis</i> <i>Notoplax cuneata</i>	Papatua
Cicada	<i>Melampsalta subalpina</i>	Tātarakihi
Cockle	<i>Austrovenus stutchburyi</i>	Tuangi
Common bully	<i>Gobiomorphus cotidianus</i>	Hawai
Common smelt	<i>Retropinna retropinna</i>	
Cushion star	<i>Patiriella regularis</i>	
Damselfly spp	<i>Austrolestes colenonis</i> , <i>Xanthocnemis zealandica</i>	Kēkēwai/Kihitara
Dragonfly spp	<i>Uropetala sp</i>	Kapowai
Dwarf galaxias	<i>Galaxias divergens</i>	
Fernbird	<i>Bowdleria punctata</i>	Mātātāa

Common name	Scientific name	Māori name
Fluttering shearwater	<i>Puffinus gavia</i>	Pakaha
Freshwater crayfish	<i>Parenephrops planifrons</i>	Kōura
Gannet	<i>Morus serrator</i>	Tākapa
Giant bully	<i>Gobiomorphus gobioides</i>	Toitōi
Giant kōkōpu	<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>	Kōkōpu
Green-lipped mussel	<i>Perna canaliculus</i>	Kuku
Grey duck	<i>Anas superciliosa</i>	Pāpera
Ground beetle spp		
Half crab	<i>Petrolisthes elongatus</i>	Pāpaka
Hairy-handed crab	<i>Hemigrapsus crenulatus</i>	Pāpaka
Hermit crabs	<i>Pagurus spinulimanus</i> <i>Astraleremus sp</i>	Waerau
Inanga	<i>Galaxias maculatus</i>	Inanga
Kingfisher	<i>Halcyon sancta</i>	Kōtare
Koaro	<i>Galaxias brevipinnis</i>	Koaro
Lamprey	<i>Geotria australis</i>	Piharau
Limpets	<i>Cellana ornate</i> <i>Cellana radians</i> <i>Notoacmea helmsi</i> <i>Siphonaria zelandica</i>	Ngākihi
Little black mussel	<i>Xenostrobus pulex</i>	Kuku-para
Little shag	<i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos</i>	Kawau paka
Long-fin eel	<i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i>	Ōrea
Long-tailed cuckoo	<i>Eudynamis taitensis</i>	Koekoeā
Marsh crake	<i>Porzana pusilla</i>	Koitareke
Mud crab	<i>Helice crassa</i>	Pāpaka
New Zealand fur seal	<i>Arctocephalus forsteri</i>	Kekeno
New Zealand pigeon	<i>Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae</i>	Kererū
New Zealand pipit	<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae</i>	Pīhoihoi
Ostrich foot	<i>Struthiolaria papulosa</i>	Totorere
Oyster borer	<i>Lepsiella scobina</i>	
Paddle crab	<i>Ovalipes catharus</i>	Pāpaka
Paradise shelduck	<i>Tadorna variegata</i>	Pūtangitangi
Paua	<i>Haliotis iris</i>	Paua
Pebble crab	<i>Heterozius rotundifrons</i>	Pāpaka
Periwinkles	<i>Litt orina cincta</i> <i>Litt orina unifasciata</i>	Ngaeti
Pied oystercatcher	<i>Haematopus fi nschi</i>	Tōrea
Pied shag	<i>Phalacrocorax varius</i>	Kāruhiruhi
Pied stilt	<i>Himantopus himantopus</i>	Poaka
Pipi	<i>Pahies australis</i>	Pipi

Common name	Scientific name	Māori name
Polychaete worms	<i>Orbina papillosa</i> <i>Armandia australis</i> <i>Pomatoceros caeruleus</i> <i>Spionidae</i> sp <i>Syllidae</i> sp <i>Lumbrineridae</i> sp	
Pūkeko	<i>Porphyrio melanotus</i>	Pukaki/Pūkeko
Purple crab	<i>Hemigrapsus edwardsii</i>	Pāpaka
Razor shell	<i>Solemya parkinsoni</i>	
Red-billed gull	<i>Larus novaehollandiae</i>	Tarapunga
Red fin bully	<i>Gobiomorphus hutt oni</i>	Hawai
Reef crab	<i>Plagusia chabrus</i>	Pāpaka
Reef heron	<i>Egretta sacra</i>	Matukutuku
Reef starfish	<i>Stichaster australis</i>	Pātangaroa
Ribbed mussel	<i>Aulacomya ater maoriana</i>	Kūtai
Sandfly	<i>Austrosimulium</i> sp	Namu
Shore crab	<i>Leptograpsus variegatus</i>	Pāpaka
Short-fin eel	<i>Anguilla australis</i>	Matamoe
Shortjaw kōkopu	<i>Galaxias postuectis</i>	Kōkopu
Snails	<i>Amphibola crenata</i> <i>Onchidella nigricans</i> <i>Potamopyrgus estuarinus</i>	Titiko
Sooty shearwater	<i>Puffinus griseus</i>	Titi
Spider crab	<i>Halicarcinus whitei</i>	Pāpaka
Spotted shag	<i>Stictocarbo punctatus</i>	Parakareka
Top shells	<i>Diloma nigerrima</i> <i>Diloma subrostrata</i> <i>Diloma zelandica</i> <i>Meglagraphia aethiops</i> <i>Risellopsis varia</i>	Whētiko
Torrent fish	<i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i>	
Variable oystercatcher	<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>	Tōrea pango
Wedge shell	<i>Telina liliana</i>	
Weka	<i>Gallirallus australis</i>	Weka
Welcome swallow	<i>Hirundo tahitica</i>	Warou
Whelks	<i>Buccinum vittatum</i> <i>Cominella glandiformis</i> <i>Cominella maculosa</i> <i>Cominella virigata</i> <i>Haustrum haustorium</i>	Huamutu/Kākara
White-faced heron	<i>Ardea novaehollandiae</i>	Matuku-moana
White-fronted tern	<i>Sterna striata</i>	Tara
White rock shell	<i>Thyas orbita</i>	

**Table 2**  
**Indigenous plant species**

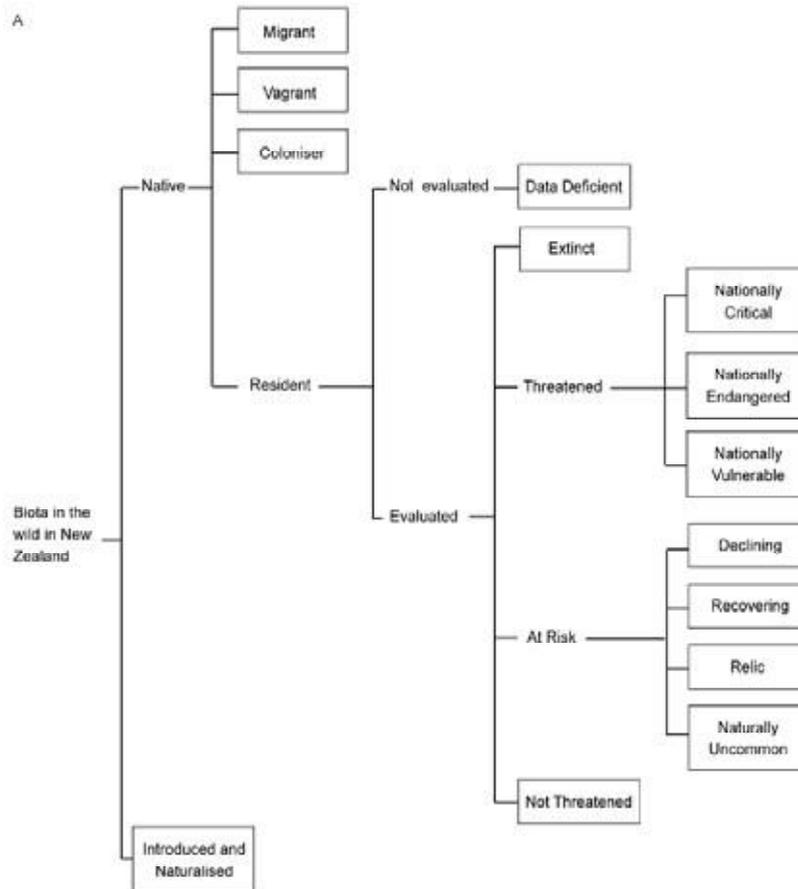
Common name	Scientific name	Māori name
blueberry	<i>Dianella nigra</i>	turutu
bog pine	<i>Halocarpus bidwillii</i>	
brown algae	<i>Carpophyllum maschalocarpum</i> <i>Carpophyllum fl exuosum</i> <i>Ecklonia radiata</i>	
bucks-horn plantain	<i>Plantago coronopus</i>	
buttonweed	<i>Cotula coronopifolia</i>	
bush clematis	<i>Clematis paniculata</i>	pua wānanga
bush lawyer	<i>Rubus cissoides</i>	tātaramoa
cabbage tree	<i>Cordyline australis</i>	tī kōuka
coastal peppergrass	<i>Lepidium banksii</i>	
coprosma spp.	<i>Coprosma lucida</i> , <i>C. robusta</i> , <i>Coprosma repens</i>	taupata karamū
cutty grass	<i>Carex secta</i> , <i>Gahnia xanthocarpa</i>	pūkio
eelgrass	<i>Zostera novaezelandica</i>	karepō
fivefinger	<i>Pseudopanax arboreus</i>	puahou
flax	<i>Phormium tenax</i> <i>Phormium cookianum</i>	harakeke wharariki
fungi		
glasswort	<i>Sarcocornia quinquefl ora</i>	ureure
hebe species	<i>Hebe sp.</i>	koromiko
hīnau	<i>Elaeocarpus dentatus</i>	hīnau
hūtū	<i>Ascarina lucida</i>	hūtū
kahikatea (white pine)	<i>Dacrydium dacrydioides</i>	kahikatea
kaikōmako	<i>Pennantia corymbosa</i>	kaikōmako
kāmahi	<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>	kāmahi
kānuka	<i>Kunzea ericoides</i>	kānuka
kawakawa	<i>Macropiper excelsum</i>	kawakawa
kiekie	<i>Freycinetia banksii</i>	kiekie
leather leaf	<i>Olearia lacunosa</i>	
lichens		
liverworts		pukoko
māhoe (whiteywood)	<i>Meliclytus ramifl orus</i>	māhoe
mānuka (tea tree)	<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>	mānuka
marsh ribbonwood	<i>Plagianthus divaricatus</i>	mākaka
mingimingi	<i>Leucopogon fasciculatus</i> <i>Coprosma propinqua</i>	mingimingi
miro	<i>Prumnopitys ferruginea</i>	miro
mosses		
native musk	<i>Mimulus repens</i>	
orchids		tutukiwi
pingao	<i>Desmoschoenus spiralis</i>	pīngao

Common name	Scientific name	Māori name
putaputawētā	<i>Carpodetus serratus</i>	putaputawētā
quintinia	<i>Quintinia serrata</i>	tāwheowheo
raupō	<i>Typha orientalis</i>	raupō
remuremu	<i>Selliera radicans</i>	remuremu
rushes	<i>Isolepis cernua</i> <i>Isolepis nodosa</i> <i>Juncus maritimus</i> <i>Leptocarpus similis</i>	wīwī
sand sedge	<i>Carex pumila</i>	
sea bite	<i>Suaeda novaezelandiae</i>	
sea lettuce	<i>Ulva sp</i>	
sea primrose	<i>Samolus repens</i>	māakoako
shore bindweed	<i>Calystegia soldanella</i>	panahi
silver fern	<i>Cyathea dealbata</i>	ponga
speargrass	<i>Aciphylla colensoi</i>	taramea
spinifex	<i>Spinifex hirsutus</i>	kōwhangatara
three square (sedge)	<i>Schoenoplectus pungens</i>	
toro	<i>Myrsine salicina</i>	toro
tree daisy	<i>Olearia sp., Brachyglottis sp.</i>	heketara
tree ferns	<i>Cyathea sp., Dicksonia sp.</i>	mamaku, whekī, whekī ponga
turpentine bush	<i>Dracophyllum fi liforme,</i> <i>D. urvilleanum</i>	inaka
wineberry	<i>Aristotelia serrata</i>	makomako

# Appendix 5

## 'Threatened' and 'at risk' indigenous plants and animals of Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve

Figure 1: New Zealand threat classification system



**Table 1**  
**Threatened and at risk animal species**

Threat Category	Species	Common name	Threat ranking*
THREATENED	<i>Anas superciliosa</i>	Grey duck	nationally critical
	<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>	Australasian bittern	nationally endangered
	<i>Charadrius bicinctus</i>	Banded dotterel	nationally vulnerable
	<i>Egretta sacra</i>	Reef heron	nationally vulnerable
	<i>Larus novaehollandiae</i>	Red billed gull	nationally vulnerable
	<i>Phalacrocorax varius</i>	Pied shag	nationally vulnerable
	<i>Sterna caspia</i>	Caspian tern	nationally vulnerable
AT RISK	<i>Anthus novaeseelandia</i>	New Zealand pipit	declining
	<i>Bowdleria punctata</i>	Fernbird	declining
	<i>Eudyptula minor</i>	Blue penguin	declining
	<i>Gallirallus australis</i>	Weka	declining
	<i>Haematopus fi nschi</i>	Pied oystercatcher	declining
	<i>Himantopus himantopus</i>	Pied stilt	declining
	<i>Puffinus griseus</i>	Sooty shearwater	declining
	<i>Sterna striata</i>	White-fronted tern	declining
	<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>	Variable oystercatcher	recovering
	<i>Porzanz pusilla</i>	Marsh crake	relict
	<i>Puffinus gavia</i>	Fluttering shearwater	relict
	<i>Eudynamis taitensis</i>	Long-tailed cuckoo	naturally uncommon
	<i>Phalacrocorax carbo</i>	Black shag	naturally uncommon
<i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos</i>	Little shag	naturally uncommon	
<i>Rallus philippensis</i>	Banded rail	naturally uncommon	

\*Threat rankings from: Miskelly, C.M.; Dowding, J.E.; Elliott, G.P.; Hitchmough, R.A.; Powlesland, R.G.; Robertson, H.A.; Sagar, P.M.; Scofield, R.P.; Taylor, G.A. 2008. Conservation status of New Zealand birds. *Notornis* 55(3): 117-135

**Table 2**  
**Threatened and at risk plant species**

Threat Category	Species	Common name	Threat ranking*
THREATENED	<i>Lepidium banksii</i>	coastal peppergrass	nationally critical
	<i>Kirkianella "glauca"Ψ</i>	swordleaf pūpō	nationally vulnerable
	<i>Rorippa divaricata</i>	rorippa, matangoa	nationally vulnerable
AT RISK	<i>Carex litorosa</i>	estuary sedge coastal	declining
	<i>Melicytus crassifolius</i>	porcupine shrub tupeia	declining
	<i>Tupeia antarctica</i>	mistletoe pīngao pūhā	declining
	<i>Ficinia spiralis</i>	large-leaved milk-	relict
	<i>Sonchus kirkii</i>	tree gossamer grass	relict
	<i>Streblus banksii</i>	weeping inaka coral	relict
	<i>Anemanthele lessoniana</i>	mistletoe coastal	naturally uncommon
	<i>Dracophyllum urvilleanum</i>	musk native spinach	naturally uncommon
	<i>Korthalsella salicornioides</i>		naturally uncommon
	<i>Mimulus repens</i>		naturally uncommon
	<i>Tetragonia tetragonioides</i>		naturally uncommon

\* Threat rankings from: de Lange P.J., Norton D.A., Courtney S.P., Heenan P.B., Barkla J.W., Cameron E.K., Hitchmough R.A., Townsend A.J., 2009. Threatened and uncommon plants of New Zealand (2008 revision). *New Zealand Journal of Botany* 47: 61-96.

**Key:**

Ψ = species is presumed extinct in the park

## Appendix 6

### Schedule 25.1F, Tasman Resource Management Plan: Areas with nationally or internationally important natural ecosystem values (within the coastal marine area)

Area No.	Area name	Seaward boundary	Summary of values	Status
16	Wainui Inlet	A line generally parallel to the sandspits and 200 metres seaward of MHWS.	A relatively large estuary in Golden Bay (~ 275 ha). Important high tide roosts are located at the tops of both spits. Notable for presence of banded rail, marsh crake and South Island fernbird. Important seascape values as viewed from road to Totaranui. Adjoins Abel Tasman National Park.	National
18	Abel Tasman National Park Coastline and Estuaries	A line generally at 1 nautical mile off shore from Taupo Point, changing to an arc 6 nautical miles from Separation Point between a line on a bearing of 15° from Taupo Point and a line on a bearing of 76° from Trig G (at the northern end of Totaranui), and continuing at 1 nautical mile off shore generally south to and around Fisherman Island (and except where it meets the northern point of AMA 3 in Tasman Bay).	A granite dominated coast some 92 km in length, interspersed by sand beaches, sculptured granite headlands, 15 estuaries and 7 islands. Notable for protected "bryozoan" coral beds at Separation Point. Also important as a refuge for banded rail, reef heron and fernbird. Backed by coastal forest, the area has spectacular seascape values. Granite coast and associated marine communities unique in New Zealand. Recognised as an area supporting one of only two populations of the endangered peppercreep.	International
19	Otuwhero, Marahau Estuaries, Sandspits and Tidal Flats	A line across Sandy Bay, from the eastern end of Tinline Bay to the western end of rocks extending west from Toko Ngawa Point.	A complex of two estuaries linked by tidal flats. Notable for largest number of banded rail for any estuary in Tasman Bay. Also present in these estuaries are fernbird, marsh crake and bitt ern. Presence of regionally rare <i>Mimulus repens</i> .	National

## Appendix 7

---

### **Processes and principles for setting maximum activity levels for water taxi and charter boat activity**

When the Abel Tasman Foreshore Scenic Reserve was created, all existing commercial operators (who held a safe ship permit granted by Tasman District Council to operate as a water taxi or charter boat) were subject to the provisions of the Reserves Act 1977 and Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987 i.e. concessions were required (see section 8.1 'Concessions – general'). 'Interim' concessions were granted to the existing water taxi and charter boat operators to allow them to continue their businesses. These concessions did not contain any controls on the amount of activity that could be undertaken.

#### **Water Taxi Activity (refer Table 2, page 79)**

##### *Person-Movements (Public Visitors)*

Data was gathered by the water taxi concessionaires for the 2007/2008 and 2008/2009 seasons on the daily number of person movements they had provided. For each concessionaire, the monthly total of person movements during the peak period (November to April) for these two years was then compared. Whichever was the higher of the two was then added together to provide an overall total for the peak period per concessionaire. Adding all these totals together for all water taxi concessionaires resulted in the total maximum water taxi activity in the peak period of 222,440.

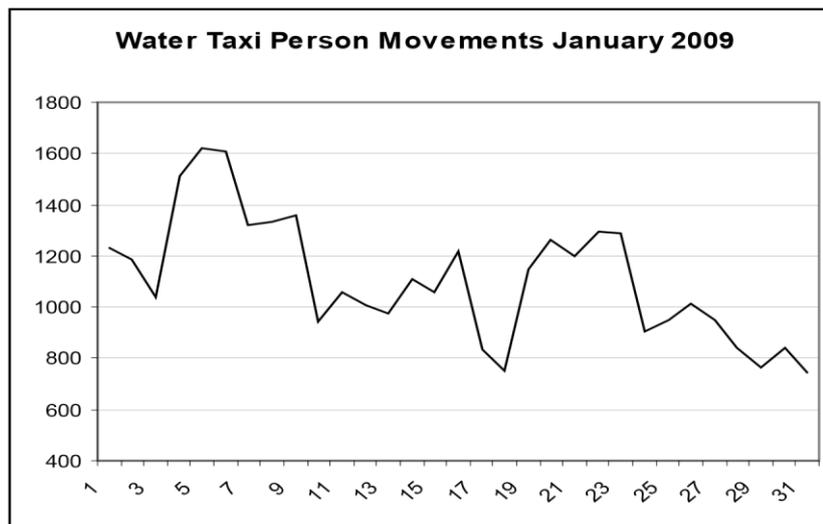
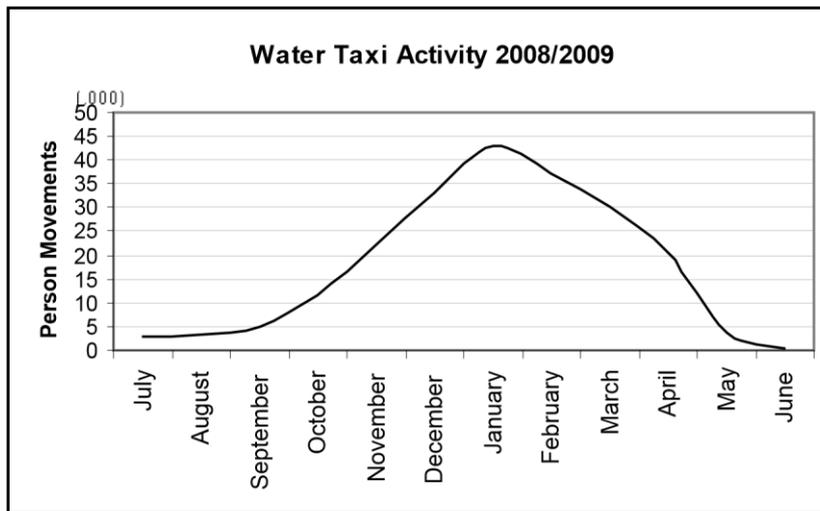
The monthly maximum during the peak period was calculated by dividing the total peak period maximum by 4 (to give 55,610 person movements). This recognises that water taxi activity is not evenly spread over the six summer months and allows for higher activity during December - March (see graph over page).

The daily maximum during the peak period was calculated by dividing the monthly maximum for the majority of operators by 20 (resulting in 2,929 person movements). This recognises that daily water taxi activity is very variable, even during the summer, due to a number of factors, particularly weather conditions (see graph over page), with some operators experiencing extreme daily fluctuations.

The off-peak period maximum of 50,000 person movements is based on the total amount of activity undertaken during May – October, with an allowance for a 25% increase.

##### *Kayak-Movements (Guided Kayaks and Freedom/Private Kayaks)*

The daily maximum figures for guided and freedom/private kayak movements are based on the amount of guided kayak activity allowed by the Abel Tasman National Park management plan (and this management plan) and what the water taxi operators have carried out, with some growth provided for.



### Charter Boat Activity (refer Table 3, page 80)

Data was gathered from the charter boat concessionaires on the number of trips undertaken each month during the 2007 - 2010 peak periods (November to April). Based on their best months' performances, the concessionaires were placed within 'bands' of activity, as set out below, for the maximum number of trips per peak period, per month and per day that they could do (with some ability for expansion):

Trips per peak period	Trips per month	Trips per day
30	5	1
60	10	2
120	20	2
180	30	3
240	40	4
360	60	6

Adding all the charter boat concession allocations together resulted in the total maximum charter boat activity in the peak period of 2310 trips, with 385 per month and 50 per day.

# Appendix 8

## Summary of charter boat activity

Type of charter boat*	LOCATION				
	Awaroa Beach (FAPL <sup>#</sup> ) and Totaranui, Sawpit Point, Onetahuti, Bark Bay, Medlands Bay, Anchorage (FANP <sup>#</sup> ) Coastal Access Points	Torrent Bay (FAPL <sup>#</sup> ) Coastal Access Points	South Coast (FAPL <sup>#</sup> )	South Coast (FANP <sup>#</sup> ) and Awaroa Vehicle Access Corridor (FANP <sup>#</sup> )	North Coast (FANP <sup>#</sup> )
1	Can drop off/pick up no more than 40 charter clients, at any time.	Can drop off/pick up no more than 10 charter clients, at any time, provided those clients are staying on the vessel overnight.	Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location, at any time <sup>1</sup> .	Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location, at any time.	No landings.
2	Can drop off/pick up no more than 40 charter clients, at any time, except at Medlands Bay.	No landings.	(i) Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location between 7am and 6pm.  (ii) Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location, at any time <sup>1</sup> , provided the client is the adjacent landowner (or guest) or prior approval has been given by the AC <sup>#</sup> .	(i) Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location between 7am and 6pm.  (ii) Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location between 7am and 6pm at any mainland location where there is no adjacent campsite.	No landings.
3	Can drop off/pick up no more than 40 charter clients, at any time.	No landings.	(i) Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location between 7am and 6pm.  (ii) Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location, at any time <sup>1</sup> , provided the client is the adjacent landowner (or guest) or prior approval has been given by the AC <sup>#</sup> .	(i) Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location between 7am and 6pm.  (ii) Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location between 7am and 6pm at any mainland location where there is no adjacent campsite.	No landings.
4	Can drop off/pick up no more than 40 charter clients, at any time, except the western Anchorage CAP <sup>#</sup> .	No landings.	Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients at any location, at any time <sup>1</sup> , provided the client is the adjacent landowner (or guest) or prior approval has been given by the AC <sup>#</sup> .	Can drop off/pick up no more than 16 charter clients between 7am and 6pm at locations where there is a public toilet on the adjacent national park land (or prior approval has been given by the AC <sup>#</sup> where there is no toilet).	No landings.

\* 1. Vessels capable of accommodating no more than 10 charter clients overnight.

2. Vessels capable of accommodating more than 10 charter clients overnight.

3. Vessels that do not provide overnight accommodation for charter clients but have on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks.

4. Vessels that do not provide overnight accommodation for charter clients and do not have on-board toilets and sewage holding tanks.

<sup>#</sup> **FAPL** – Foreshore Adjacent to Private Land; **FANP** – Foreshore Adjacent to National Park; **CAP** – Coastal Access Point; **AC** – Administration Committee

<sup>1</sup> With the exception of the vessel exclusion zone at Venture Creek, Awaroa, from the first weekend prior to Christmas until the first Monday after Waitangi Day.

# Appendix 9

---

## Conservation General Policies (2005) referred to in this plan

### 2 Treaty of Waitangi Responsibilities

- 2(a) Relationships will be sought and maintained with tangata whenua to enhance conservation. These relationships should be based on mutual good faith, cooperation and respect.
- 2(b) Partnerships to enhance conservation and to recognise mana should be encouraged and may be sought and maintained with tangata whenua whose rohe covers any place or resource administered by the Department. Such partnerships will be appropriate to local circumstances.
- 2(c) Protocols and agreements may be negotiated and implemented to support relationships and partnerships, by mutual consent between tangata whenua and the Department.
- 2(d) Tangata whenua will be consulted when statutory planning documents are being developed. Information will be made available to facilitate their contributions.
- 2(e) Tangata whenua will be consulted on specific proposals that involve places or resources of spiritual or historical and cultural significance to them.
- 2(f) Tangata whenua involvement and participation in conservation on public conservation lands and waters will be encouraged and may be supported with information and technical advice.
- 2(g) Customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species may be authorised on a case by case basis where:
- i. it is consistent with all relevant Acts and regulations (including fisheries legislation), conservation management strategies and plans;
  - ii. it is consistent with the purposes for which the land is held;
  - iii. there is an established tradition of such customary use at the place; and
  - iv. the preservation of the indigenous species at the place is not affected.
- The views of tangata whenua should be sought and had regard to.
- 2(h) Public information and interpretation, where it refers to places or resources of significance to tangata whenua, should be developed with them, and should include Māori place and species names, make appropriate use of te reo Māori, and draw attention to tangata whenua values.
- 2(i) The Department will seek to avoid actions which would be a breach of the Treaty of Waitangi.
- 2(j) The Department will participate in and implement relevant Treaty claims settlements consistent with its statutory functions.

### 4.1 Terrestrial and freshwater species, habitats and ecosystems

- 4.1(e) Customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species may be authorised on a case by case basis where:
- i. it is consistent with all relevant Acts and regulations (including fisheries legislation), conservation management strategies and plans;
  - ii. it is consistent with the purposes for which the land is held;

- iii. there is an established tradition of such customary use at the place; and
  - iv. the preservation of the indigenous species at the place is not affected.
- The views of tangata whenua should be sought and had regard to.
- 4.1(f) Fishing for whitebait and eels in reserves may be authorised only where:
- i. it is consistent with all relevant Acts and regulations (including fisheries legislation);
  - ii. it is consistent with the purposes for which the land is held;
  - iii. the preservation of the indigenous freshwater fisheries and the maintenance of the range and stocks are not affected; and
  - iv. it is provided for in the conservation management strategy or plan.
- 4.2 Biosecurity and management of threats to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems**
- 4.2(b) Biosecurity and pest management programmes should give priority to:
- i. preventing pests becoming established, including illegal and inadvertent transfers;
  - ii. eradicating newly naturalised pests at places, where practicable;
  - iii. eradicating, containing or reducing the range of pests that are established but not widespread, where practicable; and
  - iv. controlling widespread pests where this is required to protect indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems, where eradication or containment of them is not practicable.
- 4.4 Marine species, habitats and ecosystems**
- 4.4(h) Tangata whenua, as kaitiaki, will be:
- i. invited to participate in the protection of marine species of cultural importance to them;
  - ii. provided with access to the remains of dead marine protected species for customary use, including those incidentally caught in commercial fishing, consistent with relevant legislation and agreed protocols;
  - iii. provided with immediate notification of strandings where possible; and
  - iv. involved in the management of stranded marine mammals, in accordance with agreed protocols.
- 5 Historical and Cultural Heritage**
- 5(c) Tangata whenua, as kaitiaki of their historical and cultural heritage, will be invited to participate in the identification, preservation and management of heritage of significance to them on public conservation lands and waters.
- 5(g) Monuments, pou whenua, plaques or other memorials may be sited in places associated with people, traditions or events of exceptional importance in New Zealand or conservation history. They should be consistent with the character of the place and should not be attached to or engraved into natural features.

## **8 Natural Hazards**

- 8(b) When a high level of risk to people, places or property from a natural hazard on public conservation lands and waters has been identified, a hazard and risk management plan should be developed by the Department, identifying options to address risks, and interested people and organisations will be informed of any proposed actions.
- 8(d) People will be responsible for their own decisions on the risks that they are prepared to take arising from natural hazards on public conservation lands and waters.

### **9.4 Sports fishing and game bird hunting**

- 9.4(b) Conservation management strategies should provide for hunting of game birds on public conservation lands, where such hunting:
- i. is consistent with the purposes for which the land is held; and
  - ii. subject to the above criterion, does not have adverse effects on absolutely protected species or on populations of indigenous species.

### **9.5 The use of vehicles and other forms of transport**

- 9.5(a) The use of vehicles and any other forms of transport should be compatible with the statutory purposes for which the place is held, or be necessary to enable the Department to perform its functions.

### **9.6 Animals**

- 9.6(a) Animals (including pets) will not be permitted to be taken into public conservation lands and waters unless this is consistent with legislation and specifically provided for in conservation management strategies or plans.

## **10 Accommodation and Related Facilities**

- 10(a) Accommodation and related facilities on public conservation lands and waters may be allowed for public recreation, educational and community services, consistent with the outcomes planned for places.
- 10(b) Accommodation and related facilities on public conservation lands and waters owned and occupied by people and organisations other than the Department, will require a concession.
- 10(c) Any application for a concession will comply with, or be consistent with, the objectives of the relevant Act, the statutory purposes for which the place is held, and any relevant conservation management strategy or plan.
- 10(d) Any application for a concession to provide accommodation or related facilities, or to extend or add to an existing structure or facility, should meet the following criteria:
- i. the accommodation or related facility cannot reasonably be located outside public conservation lands and waters;
  - ii. it cannot reasonably be built elsewhere on public conservation lands and waters where the potential adverse effects would be significantly less; and
  - iii. the applicant cannot reasonably use or share an existing structure or facility.
- 10(e) All accommodation and related facilities including replacements, additions and extensions on public conservation lands and waters should:

- i. be consistent with the outcomes planned for places;
  - ii. avoid or otherwise minimise adverse effects on natural resources and historical and cultural heritage, and on the benefit and enjoyment of the public, including public access;
  - iii. complement and, wherever possible, be located close to existing accommodation and related facilities;
  - iv. be located, designed, constructed and maintained to meet all legal requirements and standards;
  - v. be of such a scale, design and colour that they harmonise with the landscape and seascape;
  - vi. provide for disabled people in places where this is practicable; and vii. be available for use by the public.
- 10(g) New accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters, for exclusive private use should not be permitted.

### **11.5 Commercial filming and photography**

- 11.5(a) Commercial filming and photography and its associated activities should be subject to the same assessment processes and conditions as other uses.
- 11.5(b) Particular care should be taken to ensure that commercial filming and photography activity does not detrimentally affect the values of sites of significance, including those of significance to tangata whenua.

### **12 Research and Information Needs**

- 12(a) Research and monitoring on public conservation lands and waters should be allowed where it:
- i. informs conservation management or contributes to interpretation and education, or improves knowledge of natural processes;
  - ii. its effects are consistent with the statutory purposes for which the place is held;
  - iii. has no significant adverse effect on the enjoyment of the public; and iv. does not pose unacceptable risks to natural, historical and cultural heritage.
- 12(d) Applications for the collection of material from public conservation lands and waters, whether for commercial or non-commercial use (excluding prospecting and mining covered by the Crown Minerals Act 1991), including indigenous species (or parts thereof), fossilised plant or animal material, soils, rocks and any other geological materials will be considered on a case by case basis. Criteria include:
- i. collection is consistent with legislation, conservation management strategies and plans and the Department's Treaty responsibilities;
  - ii. collection is essential for either management, research, interpretation or educational purposes;
  - iii. the amounts to be collected are small in relation to the abundance of the material;
  - iv. whether collection could occur outside or elsewhere within public conservation lands and waters where the potential adverse effects could be significantly less; and

- v. there are minimal adverse effects from collection.

### **13 Conservation Management Strategies and Plans**

- 13(a) Conservation management strategies and plans should include identification of:
- i. natural resources, historical and cultural heritage, and recreational opportunities, at specific places on land and water;
  - ii. planned outcomes, objectives and policies for specific places, consistent with the purposes for which the public conservation lands and waters are held;
  - iii. potential conflicts between planned outcomes at specific places and explanation of how these will be resolved;
  - iv. the adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of different uses and explanation of how these effects will be minimised; and
  - v. objectives for departmental advocacy relating to conservation outside public conservation lands and waters;
- and should also have regard to:
- vi. relevant territorial authority statutory planning documents; and vii. integrated management of places to achieve national conservation outcomes, and to coordinate planning between places covered by other conservation management strategies and plans.
- 13(c) Integrated management on public conservation lands and waters adjoining national parks should be complementary to and not detract from national park values.
- 13(e) Conservation boards will be consulted on matters relevant to the implementation of conservation management strategies and plans, including applications for a concession requiring an interest in land.
- 13(f) The Department will provide conservation boards with a report (at least annually) on the implementation of conservation management strategies and plans, and conservation management strategies should include major milestones towards planned outcomes to facilitate implementation reporting.
- 13(g) Public consultation will be sought on a proposed amendment to a conservation management strategy or plan, except where this would not materially affect the objectives or policies expressed in the strategy or plan or the public interest in the area concerned, including where the proposed amendment either:
- i. corrects a factual error; or
  - ii. updates information on protected areas managed by the Department; or
  - iii. changes the names or classification of places following reclassification in accordance with the relevant legislation; or
  - iv. reflects changes in legislation; or
  - v. provides clarification of an objective or policy; or
  - vi. deletes reference to a conservation management plan that has been revoked.